
(9)

بسم الله الرحمن الرحيم
مُقَقَدّة

الحمد لله رب العالمين، والصلاة والسام على أشرف الأنبياء والمرسلين، نبينا محمد وعلى آله وصحبه أجمعين، ومَنْ تَبِعَهُمْ بِبْحْسَانٍ إلى يَيْمْ الدِّيِّنِ أما بعد : فهذا هو الجزءُ الاؤُّلُ من كتـاب » دروس اللغة العربيـة لغير النـاطقين










الفَصْلر

مدينةُ الرَّسُول صلى اللهُ عليه وسلّم
ف. عبد الرحيم

(17) الدَّرْنُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ

الـمدرِّس:
وتَجْوِيِهِ .

عبد السلام: أَشْكُرُك يا دُكْتُرْ . جَزَاكَ اللَّهُ خَيْرَاً. الـمدرِّس:
 الـمدرِّس: هذا هُعْجَمٌ جَامِعِيٌّ • إنّه ذُو فَوَائِدَ مُتَعَدِّدَةٍ: إنَّهِ يَأْتي بِشَرْحِ وَافٍ لِلْكَلِمَات مَعَ أَمْثِلَةٍ كَثِيرةٍ، ويَذْكُرُ المَسَائِلَ النَّحْوِيَّةَ، وَكَذَكِلكَ

يَحْوِي صُوَراً مُلَوَنَّةً لِتَوْضِيحِ مَعَانِي بَعْضِ الكِلِمَاتِ
أحمدا: في كَمْ مُجَلَّلٍِ هو ؟
الـمدرِّس: : في مُحَلَّدَيْنِ ضَخْمْمَيْنِ
إبراهيمُ:

حامل : هأَنْذَا يا أستاذ .
الـمدرِّس: كَثُرَ غِيابُكُ هَذِّه الائَّامَ يا حامل .




الـمدرِّس: مَهْمْا يَكُن السَّبَبُ فَقَدْ فَاتَتْاك دُرُوسٌ مُهِهَّةُ .
 الـمدرِّس : لا مَانِعَ
(يَدْخُلُ المُرُ اقِبُ)
المراقبُ: : (بَبْاَ النَّحِيَّة) مَنْ ارَرَادَ أَنْ يَشْتَرِك في مُحْيَّمِّ الشَّبابِ فَلْيُسَجِّلِ أَسْمَه في مَكْتْبِ
(يَخْرُ


 الحديثَ يا أُسامة.


㢄

 والرَّحَحَةِ





المدرِّس: أَحْسَنْت .
 أَحَْلِّي على الهِيِّتِ.

 محمد: جَجَّاَكَ اللّهُ خَيْراً يا دُكْتْور.


 اَْبْنِ تَيْمِيَّةَ
(17 (I النَّرّْهُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ


وَلْيُوَذِّنِّ .

تَمَارِينٌ
أَحِبْ عَن الأُسْئلةِ الآثِيَةِ

Answer the following questions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ؟ (1 (1) } \\
& \text { (Y) } \\
& \text { ؟ مَا } \\
& \text { - } 1
\end{aligned}
$$

فَالثُّالْثِيٌّ مَا كَانَ فِيهِ ثَاْثَّةٌ أَحْرُفٍ أَصْلِيَّةٍ 6 نَحْوُ: دَخَلَ، كَتَبَ، شَرِبَ .



(1) فَعَلَ يَفْعُلُ نَحْوُ: كَتَبَ يَكْتُبٌ .

فَعَلِ يَفْعِلُ نَحْوُ: جَلَسَ يَجْلِسُ ن (Y)
(
(乏) فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ نَحْوُ: شَرِبَ يَشْرَبُ
(0) فَعُلَ يَفْعُلُ نَخْوُ : كَثْرَ يَكْثُرُ
(7) فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ نَحْوُ: وَرِشَ يَرِثُ نُ نِ

Sort out the thulāth $\bar{\imath}$ from the rubā'ti in the following.
حَفِظَ، نَامَ، تَرْجَمَ، خَرَجَ، هَرْوْلَ، بَعْثَرَ، دَعَا .

Sort out the thulāthī muijarrad from the thulāthì mozzid in the following.



الأَفْعَالِلِ الَّنِي تَلِيها .
Write the mudatri' , the amr and the masdar of each of the following verbs as shown in the example.

(IT) الـَّرَّمُُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ





Write ism al-fá'il of each of the following verbs.


صَوْرَّ
حَحَنَ
$\qquad$白


سَجَّلَ
حَلَّشَ




 Write the muldari $i^{\prime}$ ，the ism al－fä＇il and the ism al－maf $f^{\circ}$ ill of each of the following verbs．


مُسْسَّهِّ
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

المُ
يُسَجِجِّ
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

$\qquad$

سَجَّلَّلَ
الَّفَّ

س
细
جَكَّ
第
號


 صَلَّى يُصَلِّيِّ

Y
.
Point out in the following sentences the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b$ fa "ala and their various derivatives.
(1) قَبَّلَ الطِّهِلْ أُمَّهُ .



鰶 \& (0)
(الرَّحمَنن)
(7) زَارَني صَحِيتِي فَرَحَّبْتُ بِهِ .
(يُس (V) قالَ تَعَالى: (V)

(9) ( )

(11) أَتَدَخِّنُ ؟ - لا، وَهَلْ يُدَخِّنُ رَجُلٌ عَاقِلِّ

كَالسَّرَطاَانِ



.
.


Give the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of ${ }^{\circ 8 \mathrm{an}}$.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • } \\
& \text { هَاتِ جَهْعَ الاسْمَاءِ الاتِيَةِ عَلَى هَأَأَ الوَزْنِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of ${ }^{2}$.


Give the master of each of the following verbs on the pattern of "فْ فَ







فَتَحَ


يَرْدرْ دَرَسَ


5


$\qquad$


يَقْتُلو S' ${ }^{\text {lino }}$ .
Give the mașdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of "لِّعَا.








What is the plural of
Use the word

(الدَّرْنُ السَّابِعَ عَشَرَ
(l اللَّرْسُ السَّابِعُ عَشَرَ
المدرِّس: كَيْفَ أَصْبَحْتُم يا إخوان ؟

الطَلَّبُةُ: أَصْبَحْنَا بِخَيْرٍ وَالحملُ للهُ . و كَيْفَ أَصْبَحْتَ أَنْتَ يا أستاذ ؟









 الشاب: الْمِيِ مُحَمَّدُّ بْنُ وِلْيَهَ، وأنا مِنْ مِنْ كَنَاًا المدرِّس: أَحَدِيثُ عَهْدٍ بالِإِنَامِ أنت ؟


محمدا :أَسْلَمْتُ عَامَ 1911 مَ المدرِّس: أَسْنَاْمَ أَبَوَاك ؟
 المدرِّس: ماذا يَعْمَل أبْوك ؟


 المدرِّس: من أين لكك هذا المُصْحَفُُ الجَمِيلُ النَّني بِيَدِلَّك ؟ مححمد: أَعْطَانِيــهِ المديرُ


 مَشَارِقِ الأَزْضِ وَمَغَارِبِها

المدرِّس: اقْرأِ الاَيَتَيْنِ يا هَارُون .






إدريسُ:

 ها

 (يْلْ


المدرِّس: لا بَأَّنَّهِ.

# (IV) الدَّرْمُ السَّابِع عَشَرَ 

Answer the following questions.


?

?

 Write the mudãri and the mascdar of each of the following verbs as shown in the example.

(الدَّرْمُُ السَّابِعَ عَشَرَ

Write the amr of each of the following verbs as shown in the example.



荡
$\qquad$

$\qquad$
$\qquad$感


ع - صُغِ أسمَ الفَاعِلِ مِنَ الأَعْعَالِ الآتَيَةَةِ
Write the ism al-fá il of each of the following verbs.

المَاضِي الْمُضَارِعُ عُمْ الفَاعِلِ
Rer
${ }^{2}{ }^{2}$





Write the ism al-maf'ill of each of the following verbs.
اسمُ الحَفْعُولِل

اِنْمُ الدَفْعُولِ

الْمَاضِي


0, er $\qquad$ ُُِْْرِنُ
(
$\qquad$

$\qquad$
أَأَعَدَّبَ

7

Point out in the following examples verbs belonging to bāb af'ala, and their various derivatives.
الهُرْسِلِلِ وَعْنُوْانُه في الكَانِبِ الأِيّْسَرِ.
(\&) أكْرْهَنَي عَمِّي عَلَى تَرْلِ الدِّرَّاسَةِ.
 . (7) وَجَلْتُ القَلَمَ مُلْقُى فَي فِنَاءِ المَعْهَلِ


 .
(11)

©...
( H (البقرة :
.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) أَغْقِقِ البابَ، ولا تُنْلْقِ النَّرَافِذَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(IV) الدَّرْمُ السَّابِعَ عَشَرَ

Point out the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b a f^{\prime} a l a$ and their derivatives occurring in the main lesson.



- Noll


Answer the following questions using pronouns as the two maf'uls as shown in the example.
(أَبِي)
(خَالم ) ....
بَنْ أَعْطَاكَ السَّاعَةَ ؟ بَ
(أُعِّ
مَنْ أَعْطَاكَ هَذَا القَلَمَمَ ؟
(الْمُدِيرّ) $\qquad$

؟ (0)
(أنت)
(زَمْيلِي) $\qquad$ (7) مَنْ أَعْطاكَ الكِتَابَ والدَّفْتْرَ ؟

Learn the use of $\begin{aligned} & \text { g } \\ & \text { in } \\ & \text { in }\end{aligned}$

- 9


اشْتْرَ هَنَا المُعْجَمَ وَلَوْ كَانَ غَالِياً .
(0) لَنْ أَسْكُنَ هَذَا البَيْتَ وَلَوْ أَعْطَيْنَنِيهِ مَجَّاناً.
（l اللَّرْسُنُ السَّابِع عَشَرَ
－
Learn the use of lām al－ibtidā＇in the following examples．
البُخَارِيّ) .
مَرِيضٌ .
. (1.r:

Rewrite the following sentences using

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Y) هُمْ أَصِقِّاءٌ } \\
& \text { ِنِّ 》أَنْ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • (r7:0زم) 确 } \\
& \text {. (Y) : ( ) ( ) }
\end{aligned}
$$

( الدَّرْمُ السَّابِعَ عَسَرَ
أَوْشَكَكَ الدَّرْمُُ أَنْ يَنْتِهِي . ويُسْتَعْمَلُ مِنْها المُضضَارِعُ أَيْضاً، نَحْوُ:
يُوشِكُ الطُّالابُ أَنْ يَرْجِعُوا إِلَى بِالَادِهِمْ .
: اپ - ا


في صَحِيفَةٍ مَا .


أَبِيهِ، نَحْوُ:
مُحَمَّدُ بْنُ عَبْدِ اللّهِ ْبْنِ عَبْدِ المُطَّلِبِ .



عَعِلِيِّ

. عَلَمَيْنِ
. 10 - هَاتِ جَجْمْ الانَّمْمَاءِ الاَتِيَةِ
Give the plural of each of the following nouns.
مُصْحَف . فِنَاء. . 17

. IV
Use each of the following words and expressions in a sentence of your own.
 هُنَيْهَهة . أَوْشَكَكَ .
(1^) الـَّرّْسُ النَّاهِنَ عَشَرَ
(reall oble (a)
المدرِّس: كيف أَمْسَيُّثُ يا إِنْوان؟



 .av .ar عُكاشَة: فَرَّحَك اللهُ دائِماً يا أستاذ .

## (8)









ومَا التَّأْنِيثُ لِاسْمَ الشَّمْسِ عَيْبٌ وَلا التَّذْكِيرُ فَخْرٌ لِلْهِهِلالِ
المدرِّس: قُلْ 》التَّأْيْثِ، وأَخْرِجْ لِسَانَكُ يَحِبُ إِخْرَاجُ اللِّسانِ عِنْدَ النُّطْقِ



 شديداً.
المدرِّس: اذْهَبْ شفَاكَ اللهُ.
إبراهيم: ما بِهِ صُداعٌ يُ يا أستاذ، إِنَّما يَكْذِبُّ
المدرِّس: وما أَدْرَاكَ أنَّهُ يَكْنِبُّ ؟ بَّ
إبراهيم: أَظُنُّهُ


(الـُشُرات:با).

Answer the following questions.


(Y) كَمْ بَتَغَتْ نِسْبَةُ النَّجَاحِ ؟
 ( ( ) ماذا يُرِيدُ المَارِّسِّ أَنْ نِيرِيَ المديرَّ ؟











. ذَهَبْتُ بِالمَرَّضِ إلى المسْتَشَشْفَ (Y)


 مَنْصُوبٌ مَحَلّا

Sort out the transitive and the intransitive verbs in the sentences.
(Y) رَجَعَ أبي البَارِحَهَ.
(乏 ) حَفِظُتُ القرآنَ وأنا صَغِيرٌ.
(0) إِجْسِسْ هُنا .
(7) إِفْتِحِ البَابَ، وأَغْلْقِ النَّوافِذَ .

(^) نَامَ الطُّقْلُ
قُمْتُ مِنَ النَّوْم مُنَأَخِّرًاً.

.
(IY) تَعِبَ العُمَّالُ .
(I ( ) رَحَّبْتُ بِالضُّيُوفِ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) يَشْرحُ المُدُرِّسُ الدَّرّْسَ مَرَّتَّْنِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (ع) قَالَ } \\
& \text { (0) (1) }
\end{aligned}
$$



( ( ( ) الإِنْعَافِ.
 أَمأْهُ
 .
 - نَامَ المَرِيضُ (Y)
(Y) نَبَا رُكَّابٌ السِّيَّارةِ التَّيَّي انْقَلَبَتْ . انْنْتَبْتْ
 نَ





Use each of the following verbs in two sentences: in the first as it is and in the second after changing it to $b \bar{a} b a f^{\prime} a l a$.



Use each of the following verbs in two sentences: in the first as it is and in the second after changing it to $b \bar{a} b$ fa' 'ala.


By what process have the verbs printed in red in the following sentences been rendered transitive.
 ضَعِيفٌ

نَّ
 (0) قَالَ لِي الطبَّبيبُ : أَخْرِبْ لْسَِانَكَ
 ( (vA: النَّحْلَ )
 (へ)

 (1.)国 (11)
وَأَحْيَا ؛

 مُضَارِعُهُ: مُرِير. والأمرُ مِنْهُ :أَرِّ





(r) أَرِني جَوازَ سَفَرِكَ يا أححمدُ .


 (0)
 1 - يُجْرَى التَّمْرِيَّانِ الشَّفَوِّيَّانِ الآتَتِّانِ.




 notebook?' The student replies saying ${ }^{2}$ 'Yes, I showed it to you.'

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ** ٪جَجَّكُ في هَنَارِقِ الأرض ومغارْبهاهِ أَيْنْ جُلْتُ فيها كثيراً. }
\end{aligned}
$$



Point out the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b f_{a}$ "ala in the following $\bar{a} y a h$, and specify their meanings.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 露 } \\
& \text { (الأَعْراف: •ع) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (يوسف: (\&) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { أْ } \tag{7}
\end{align*}
$$





 (7) إِيَّالكِ والكَسَسَلَ يا زَيْنَبُ


 النَّارُ الحَطَبَ"، .



Form examples of tahdhir with the help of the following words.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) السُّفُورُ / يا أخواتي } \\
& \text { (Y) الكَكِبُ / يا عُثْمْان } \\
& \text { (Y) الَحَسَدُ / يا عَزَّةٍ } \\
& \text { ( ( ) النَّمِيمَةُ / يا أَخَوَيَّ } \\
& \text { (0) النُُُّولُ مِنَ الكحَافِلَةِ وَهِيَ تَسِيرُ / يا أَطْفال } \\
& \text { (T) التَّبَّرُ / / يا بِنْتِي } \\
& \text { البْدَعَهُةُ / أيَّهَا المُسْنِلمُونَ }
\end{aligned}
$$




》إِنَّمَا الأَعْمَالُ بِالنِّيّاتِ《، .




 Use each of the following sentences as jawāb al-qasam.
. فَرِحْتُ بِرِيارَتِكَ (1)
(Y) قُلْتَ لِي هَكَذَا .

رَاَبَيْنُه في السُّوقِ .

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

(1 النَّرْسُ الثَّامِنَ عَشَرَ
》 *


نَحْنُ مُتْعَبُونَ
(1) الحَجْ

*

Write the $i^{\prime} r a \bar{b} b$ (grammatical analysis) of إِنَّ بي صُداعاً شَديداً. Answer each of the following questions using the name of the disease mentioned in front of it in brackets.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إنَّ بي صُداعاً شديداً. } \\
& \text { (زُ (زَامٌ ) } \\
& \text { (0) } \\
& \text { ( } \\
& \text { (إِنْهَالٌ ( } \\
& \text { (صُوَاءْ) } \\
& \left(u^{2} \lg ^{-2}{ }^{2}\right) \\
& \text { (1) مَاذَا بكَ يا عَليُّ ؟ } \\
& \text { (Y) أخوك ماذا بهِ ؟ } \\
& \text { ( ) ماذا بكم ؟ } \\
& \text { ( ) ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (T) هؤلاء الطَّأِلْاتُ، مَاذَا بَاءِّنّ ؟ } \\
& \text { (V) } \\
& \text { \# * * } \\
& \text { الآتيَّةِ على وَزنِ فَعَالِ : }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the mașdar of each of the following verbs.

$$
\text { نَجَحَ } \cdot \text { فَسَدَ . نَفِلَ . ضَلَّلَ. }
$$

年 الجَمْعْعِ، إليك أمثلة أْخْرَى :


Use each of the following words in a sentence of your own.
 ".
 . aU
 saying ؟ o
(19) اللَّرّْرُ التَّاسِعَ عَشَرَ
(19) الدَّرَّنُ التَّاسِعُ عَشَرَ

المدرِّس: أين أحمد يا إخْوان ؟ عليّ : سافَرِّ إلى مَكّةَ لِعِيادَةِ أَخِيهِ المريضِ

 المدرِّس: كَأَنَّكَ من الـهِنْدِ .
مجاهد: أنا أَصْالً من الهُند. إنَّ أبي هَاجَرَ من الهِنْدِ إلى أُسْتُرَالِيَا وهو
شَابٌّ . وأنا وُلِدْتُ هُناك .
المدرِّس: أَلك ذَوُو قُرْبَى في الهند ؟



المدرِّس: أُعْعَجَبْتَكَ الجامِعَةُ الإسْالامِيَّةُ ؟

. الوَخْي ومُهَاجَرِ النَّبِيِّ
المدرِّس : لِمَ تَأَخَّرْتَ يَا مُجْاهد ؟ْ جِئْتَ بَعْدَ مُضِيِّ شَهْرٍ مِنْ بَدْءِ الدِّراسِّة، وقد فَاتَتْاك دُرُوسٌ .
مجاهد : حَحوَلْتُ كَثِيراً أَنْ آتِيَ عِنْدَ بَدْءِ الدِّراسةِ ولَكِنْ لَم أَسْتَطِعْ أَرْجُو أن تُسَاعِدَني عَلَى فَهْمِ الدُّرُوسِ السَّابِّقَةِ

المدرِّس: سأُساعِلُكُ إنْ شاء اللّه.

 اللّه
المدرِّس: لِنُرَاجِعِ الدَّرْسَ . اقْرَأُ الآيَةَ يا عليّ .

为



手

 عَكَيْهُا ؟
أبو بكر: هي الإِيْمانُ بِاللهِ وَرَسُولِهِ، والجِهَادُ في سبِيلِ اللهِهِ بِالنَّفْسِ والْمَالِ.


زُهَير:


المدرِّس: مَنِ الَّذِينَ يُحِبُّهُمُ اللّهُ يا عليّ ؟ علي: يُحبُّ المُجَاهِدِينَ المُعَعَاتِلِينَ في سَبيلِهِ المدرِّس: كيف يُعَاتِلُ هَؤُلاءِ ؟
 المدرِّس: ماذا تُفْيلُ 》 كأَنَّنَّهِ يا زهير ؟
 و كَذَلِكَ تُفِيدُ الظَّنَّ نَحْوُ: كَأَنّْي أَعْرِفُكَ المدرِّس: أَحْسَنْتَ يا زهير. مَالَكَ تَنْعَسُ يا عبدَ اللّهِ ؟ِ عبد اللهِ: لا تُؤَاخِذْني يا أستاذ، زُرْتُ البارِحَةَ جَارًاً لي وجَلَّنْتُ عِنْدَهُ أشَاهِلُ

 عبد اللّهِ: أَرْجْو المُسامَحَةَةِ
(يُنادِي المدرِّسُ المُمرَاقِبَب)
 المدرِّس: نعمّ. مَتَى يَعُودُ المديرُ هِ المراقِبُ: قَدْ يَعُودُ اليَوْمَ إن شاء اللهُ .

Answer the following questions.

سَافَرَ. مَامَحَحْ ا Tَخَاً.


Write the muḍāri', the amr and the mașdar of each of the following verbs.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) }
\end{aligned}
$$

(19) الدَّرْمُ التَّاسِعَ عَشَرَ

Give the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of ${ }^{\text {en }}$.
ه - هَاتِ أَسْماءَ الفَاعِلِينَ مِنَّ الأَفْعَالِ الاَتِيَةِة.

Give the ism al-fá 'il of each of the following verbs.


Give the ism al-fá 'il and the ism al-maf'"ul of the following verb.


اسْمُ الفَاعِلِلِ


المَاضِي

## يُخَاطِبُ

خَاطَبَ
ت ا V الفَاعِلِ واُسمَ المَفْعُولِلِ :
Point out in the following sentences the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b \begin{aligned} & \text { b } \\ & \text { فَاعَ } \\ & \text { and } \\ & \text { and their derivatives. }\end{aligned}$

لِلْمِيلادِ (r مra).
(Y) سافَرَ أبي إلى الرِّياضِ لِلْعِلَّجِ
(0) نَادِ المُراقِبَ يا عليّ .
(7) أنا مُرَاسِلُ صَحِيغَةٍ.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { نَافَقَ } \\
& \text { جَاهَهَ } \\
& \text { نَادَى نِدَاءُ (أَصْلُهُ : نِدَايٌّ) } \\
& \text { عَالَجَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هَاتِ المَصْدَرَ عَلَى وَزْنِ 》ِفِعالٍ }
\end{aligned}
$$






قَالَ: 》نعمّ《 (رواه البخاري).
．（1．） －人


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$


路》－ه قَدْ وَصَكِبِ الطَّأِرَةُةُ


قَدْ يَعُودُ المديرُ غَداً．．
(19) الـَّرّْمُ التَّاسِعُ عَشَرَرَ
»اقَدْ يَأْتي المُديرُ غَداً< أي يُمْكِنُ أَنْ يَأْتِيَ غَداً .
(ب) التَّقْلِيلَ، نَحْوُ :
قَدْ يَنْجَحُ الطَّالبُ الكَسْالُنُ. (أَي أَحْياناً يَنْجَحُ الطَّالِبُ الكَسْاَلانُ) .
-
نَحْوْ:
ذَوُو القُرْبَى أَحَقُّ بِمُسَاعَدَتِكَكَ . مَرْفُوْعٌ بِالوَواوِ)
(مَنْالِسْ ذَوِي الِِلْمْ
هَذْهِ هَسَاكِنُ الطُّالِبِ ذَوِي الَائِلَاتِ.
وَوْنْل ذَوُو 》ا㿥


(1) جَاءَ المدرِّسُ، لَكِنِ الطُّالابُ مَا جَاءُوا .
 (Y) غَابَ عَليٌّ لَكِنْ حَضَرَ أَحملُ .


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Ir }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { لِمَن ذَكِكُمُ الدَّفَّرُرُ يا إخْوان ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {.《歎任》》 } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the maşdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern
وَرَسَ كَ كَتَبَ


Give the maṣdar of


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { سَفَرْْجَلٌ } \\
& \text { عَنْالِلِبٌٌ عَنَادِ } \\
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of خَطَأَئا




Give the verb from which the comparative ${ }^{\text {أُوهَ }}$ is derived, and give its mudāri ' and maṣdar.
Also give four $\bar{a} y a h$ in which this verb or one of its derivatives occurs.

Give the mudāri ${ }^{\prime}$ of each of the following verbs.

(r.) الدَّرّْهُ العِشْرُونَ

 وقُُ الصَّالة.










 الأْْْرُى
(Y.) اللَّرّْرُمُ العِشْرُونَ

موسى: مَتَى تُوُفِيَتْ رُقَيَّةُ رَضِيَ الللُّهُ عَنها ؟
 اللهَ عَنْهُ عَنِ المَعْرَكَةِ بِسَبَبِ مَرَضِهَا بِأَمْرِ رَسُولِ اللهِ


(يَرِنّ الجَرَسنُ)
أسامة: غداً نذهب نَحنُ المُتَفَوِِِّينَ إلى مكَّة إن شاء اللهَ . أَترِيدُ شَيْئًاً مِنْ هُنَاكَ ؟
المدرِّس: تَقَبَّلَ الللّهُ عُمْرَتَكُمْ أَرْجُو أَنْ لَا تَنْسَونِي في دَعَوْاتِكُمْ أسامة: إنْ شاء الله. تَتَارِينُ

Answer the following questions.
(1) (1 لِمَاذا تَأَخَّرَ أُسَامَةُ ؟

(Y) لِمَاذا تَخَلَّفَ عُثْمانُ رَضِيَ اللّهُ عَنْهُ عَنْ مَعْرَكَةِ بَدْرٍ





Write the mudāri', the amer, the ism al-fá 'il and the mașdar of each of the following verbs.




بِّا


On تَ تَكَكَّ画

Write the mudäri ', the amer and the massdar of each of the following verbs.
d $_{4}^{2}{ }^{2}$

908

تَغَلَّ

تَغَلَّىَى

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$


تَنَّ




Point out in the following sentences the verbs belonging to barb tafia" "ala and their derivatives.
(Y.) السَّرْنُ العِشْرُونَ
(1) أَنَا مُتْزَوِِّّ
(r) أُرِيدُ أَنْ أتَحَدَّتَ إِلَيَكَ في مَوْضُوعِ مُكِهِّم.
(乏) لَمْ أَتْلَّ رِسالةً مِنْ أهْلِي مُنْنُ شَهْرٍ أو أَكْثْرَ.
(T) الآَنَ تَذَكَّرْتُقُ اَسْمَهُ.
(V) حَوَوَل اللِّصُّ دُخُولَ البَيْتِ بِتَسَلُّقِ الجِدَارِ.
( (^) تَعَلَوْا نَتْغَلَّ.
(9) أَتَعَشَّى بُعَيْدَ صَلاةِ المَغْرِبِب.
(1) أَمْتَوَضِّيٌُ أنت ؟


عَامَ . . 1 هـ

( (10) وَقَالَ:

V



－
Rewrite the following sentence using bāb tafa＂ala as shown in the example．



和》－ 9



وفي التَّنْ يلِ في قِصَّةِ إبراهيمَ عَلَيْهِ السَّاَلْمُ： ．VV：الأنَّعام）هِ
．

وَيَأْتي 》المَخْصُوص\＆＜ （1）（1 نَحْنُ المُسْبِمِينَ لَا نَخَافُ إلَّا اللّهُ ．
(Y.) الَّرَّسُنُ العِشْرُونَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences using an appropriate



Oral exercise: Each student gives an example of الاخْتِصاص using the name of his people, e.g.,
نَحْنُ الهنودَ، نَحَنُ الأَأِرِةَة، نَحَنُ الآلَّمانَ، نححنُ الإِنْكِلِينزَ

Give the mudāri $i^{\prime}$ of each of the following verbs.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَسْرَعَ } \\
& \text { تَجَسَّسَ } \\
& \ldots . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . \\
& \text { تَوَجَّهَ } \\
& \text {.................... Cَ بَ } \\
& \text {. } 1 \text { - هُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the singular of each of the following nouns.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { خُلَفَاء. وَرَثَّة. هِعَاشِر . } \\
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the plural of each of the following nouns.
رِسَالة. . حَحِيقة . اُْهْل . وَفَاةٌ .
(Y) الدَّرْمُ الـحَادِي وَالعِشْرُوْنَ
(Y) الدَّرْسُ الـحَادِي وَالعِشْرُونَ

المدرِّس: عَمَّ تَتَسَاءَلُونَ يا إخوانِّ
حامِلّ: صَعْبَةً ؟ أَنَسْنَطِيعُ أَنْ نَنْجَحَ بِتَقْدِيرِ مُمْتَازٍ أَمْ لا ؟




المدرِّس: كُونُوا هُتْفَائِلِينَ، ولا تَكُونُوا مُتْشائِمِينَ .لَا دَاعِيَ كِلْخَوْفِ، فَإِنَّكُمْ

لَكَ تَتَتَّاءَبُ يا أبا بَكْرٍ ؟



عُمَرُر: المدرِّس: لِمَ التَّشَاجُرُ يا حاملُ ؟








واَسْتَتْفْرَاهُ .
حامد وعبَّاس: نَنُوبُ إلى اللّهِ ونَسْتَنْمِرْهُهُ



 المدرِّس: اذْهَبْ شَفَاكَ اللَّهُ


 مُتَتَاوِلِ أَيْدِيكُمْ إنْ شاء اللّه .

Answer the following questions.


Write the muḍāri', the amp, and the masdar of each of the following verbs.

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$


يَيْتَاوَلُ
$\qquad$


تَنَاوَلِ
ة. jew
U ELis

受


Write the ism cl-fä'il of each of the following verbs.

(T1) الدَّرْنُ الـحَادِي وَالِعْشُوْنَ






(9) ذَاكَ الرَّجُل كَيْنَ بِأَعْمْى . إنَّما يَتَعَامَى حَتَّى يَتَصَلَّقَ عَلَيْهِ النَّاسُ .


Q (Y)




طَمَعَ فِيهِ، أَوْ ما فِيهِ عُسْرٌ، نَحْوُ:
(1) كَيْتَ النَّبابَ يَعُودُ.
(گ) لَيْتَ لي مَلْيُونَ دُولارٍ.

Rewrite the following sentences using لَيْتَ
أَدْخِلْ 》 (0)
(1) حـاملٌ حَيٌّ .


( $(Y)$
( ) أَنَا شَابُّ
.

(Y) المَّرْنُ الـحَادِي وَالحِشْرُونَ


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (وَذَلِكَ أذَا كَانَ مُغْرَداًَ أَيْ غَيْرَ مُضَافٍ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(جـ) وفِي الحَدِيثِ »لَا صَاَلَةَ بَعْدَ الغَدَاةِ حَنَّى تَطْلُعَ الشَّمْسُ ، وَلَا صَلاةَ بَعْدَ

Make sentences with the help of the following words using لَالنَّأِيَةُ لِلْجِنْسِ

(فَائِلَةٌ

(حَاجَةٌ
(مِّنْ (مْ )
الِهَذَا الطَّالِبِ في الجَامِعَةِ. (مَتِيلٌ)
إلى الكَرَاسِيّّ الآنَّ في هَذَا الطُّعَامِ.
. لَا لَرَرَ فِيْرِ
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$ (Y) هَنْه المَجَلَّةُ

(0)
(7)

- 9

Replace the noun with the masdar mu'awwal in each of the following sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (ع) إيّاكُنَّ والَحَسَدَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

（Y）اللَّرْسُ الـحَادِي وَالعِشْرُونَ

－米
．هَؤلاءِ الرِّجالُ عُرْ
－هَؤُلاءِ النِّسَاءُ عُرْ

Write the feminine，and the masculine－feminine plural of each of the following nouns．

－
－أَبْيَص
》أَّْيَضُ

أَحَلُهُمَا بِالوَاوِ، وَالاَخَرُ بِغَيرِها ．

Give the two masdar forms of each of the following verbs．


$$
\begin{aligned}
\text { 范 }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the sound feminine plural of each of the following nouns．
غُرْفَة 6 شُرْفَة 6 خُطوَة















المُمْْرِد، نَحْوُ:



(ج) (ج) (


هِيَ سِتَّةُ، وَهِيَّ:

 .

كَأَنَّ: تُتُِيدُ التَّشْبِيَ، نَحْوُ: كَأَنَّ العِلْمَ نُوُرْ وقَدْ تُفِيدُ الظَّنَّ، نَحْوُ: كَأَنّْي أَعْرْفُكَ
لَكِنَّ:

تَعَلَّ: يَمُوتُ




مِن أَخْكَامْ اَسْمِهِهَا وَخَبَرِهَا:


（Y）الدَّرْمُ الـحَادِي وَالعِشْرُونُ

> . (آل عمران: 199 (1 ) . (r)
（لقمان：\＆巛）．
－كَأَنَّكَ مِنَ اليَمَنِ．لَعَلَّ المدرِّسَ عِنْدَ المدَ
 غفورٌ اللّهُ
－يَجُوزُ تَوَسُّطُ خَبَرِهَا بَيْنَها وَبَيْنَ أَسْهِهَا إذا كَانَ الاسمُ مَعْرِفَةً والخَبَرُ شِبْهَ جُمْلَةٍ نَحْوُ：

－يَجُوزُ دُخُولُ نونِ الوِقَايةِ عَلَى 》إِنَّ، وَأَنَّ، وَكَأَنَّ، وَلَكِنَّهِ، فَنَّقُولُ：

 وأَمَّا 》

(YY) الدَّرْسُ الثَّانِي وَالعِشْرُونَ
 الحَسَنُ: أنا لَمْ أكتبِ الوَاجِباتِ يا أستاذ . المدرِّس: لِمَهْ ؟
الحسن: انْكَسَرتْ نَظَّرَّتي، فَالَ أَسَتَطِيٌُ أَنْ أَقْرَأَ أَوْ أَكْتُبَ . المدرِّس: عُذْرُكَ مَقْبُولٌ .. . وأَّْنَ دَفْتْرُك يا مُعَاوِيَّة ؟

معاوية: أنا أَيْضاً لم أَكْتُبْ. المدرِّس: أَنْكَسَرَتْ نَظَّارتُك أيضاً ؟
 -الانْقْطِا عُ إلى مُنْتَصَفِ اللَّيّْا
(ution
المدرِّس: لِمَ تأَخَّرْتَ يا عدنان ؟
عدنان: : انْقَلَبَتْ سَيَّارةٌ في الطُرِّيقِ، فَتَوَقَّفَ المُرُورُّهُ

عدنان: في المُنعَطَف النَِّي عِنْدَ الجِسْر. المدرِّس: أَسَلِمَ الرُّكَّابِ ؟


عدنان : نعمَ، سَبِمُوا، والحَمْدُ لللّه. لَوْلا فَضْلُ اللهِ عَلَيْهِمْ لَمَاتُوا. .. كَانَ الانْقِلابُ عَنِيفاً، فَقَدِ الْنْحَعَعِت الالْبَوْابُ، وَتَكَسَّرَ الزُّجُاجُ المدرِّس: انقَرأِ الدَّرَّسَ يا طَلْحَة .
طَلْحَةُ: انْكَسَفَتِ الشَّمْسُ يَوْمَ مَاتَ إبراهيمُ، فَقَال النَّاسُ : انْكَسَفَتْ
 مِنْ آَاتِ اللّهِ، لَا يَنْكَسِفَانِ لِمَوْتِ أَحَدِ وَلَا لِحَيَاتِهِ. فَاٍَِا رَأَيْتُمُوهُمَا

فَاْدْعُوا اللّهَ، وَصَلُّوا حَتَّى يَنْجَليَّهِ • (رواه البُخاريّ) . عدنان: مَنْ إبراهيمُ هذا يا أستاذ ؟

 المدرِّس : نعم. معاوية: لِمَمْهُ ؟
المدرِّس: لِأَنَهُهُ عَلَمٌ أَعْجَمِيٌّ ، والَعَلَمُ الأَعْجَمِيُّ لَا يَنْصَرِفُ .

Answer the following questions.

 Write the mudāri', the ism al-fá il and the mașdar of each of the following verbs.


(YY) الدَّرْنُ الشَّانِي وَالعِشْرُونَ

Complete the following sentences.


المِمَّالُ: فَتَحْتُ البَابَ .
$\qquad$ كَ (Y) قَطْعْتُ الَحْبَلَ (Y) (Y) . قَلَبْتُ الكِتَابَ (


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } 0
\end{aligned}
$$

Complete the following sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { المِثَّالُ: كَسَّرتٌ الزُّجُجَاجَ } \\
& \text { قَطَّعّتُ الحَبْلَ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

- 


Rewrite the following sentences using hamzat al-istifhām.

 Point out in the following sentences the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b$ لْ إْنَعَ and their derivatives.
( ( ) وَقَعَ الكُوبُ عَلَى الأزْْضِ وَاْنْنْسَرَهُ








هَاءَ أَمْثِثَلَة أَخْرْى :
. ( ( )
(Y) مَرِضْتُ يَوْمَ زَارَ الوَزيرُ الجِامِعِةَ
. وُلِدْتُ يَوْمَ مَاتَّ جَدِّيِّيرِ (Y)

》يَوْمَ ماتَ إبراهيمُّ< تَقْدِيرُهُ: يَيْمَ مَوْتِ إبر اهيمَم










. لَوْلَا الحَيَاءُ لَبَكَيْنَا لَ
 أكمِل ما يَأتي مِن أمثلَّةٍ 》لولا《 بِجَوَابٍ مُنَّاسِبٍ.

$\qquad$ (r) لَوْلَا الإِنْالِمُ $\qquad$ (1) (1) لَوْلَا العِلْمُ
 (Y) لَوْلا أنّكَ مَرِيضٌ .

يَكُون أْسْمُ الإِشَارَةِ نَعْتاً إذا وَوَعَ بَعْدَ الِعَمَ، أَوِ المُعَرَّفِ بالإِضَافَةِ، نَحْوُ:






．（r＾：النَّمْن）

： 11

行－Ir



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 》" }
\end{aligned}
$$

المفْهُومِ مِنَ السِّياقِ

Use each of the following words in sentences of your own．
. Vó

تَك～سَّ 6
$6 \underbrace{-}[\ddot{i} \mid$

＂

$$
19 \varepsilon
$$



حامِدُ: : يا أستاذ، إنَّ لَدَيَّ أَقْتِرَاحَاً.
 اَُقْتِرَاحُحك ؟


 . مُصْطْفَى




 أَقْتَبَ الاْمْتِحانُ
مُحْنَارُ: حامدُ: : مَتَى تَنْتْهِي الِّرِّراسُّ يا أستاذ ؟



 الامْتْحَانِانِ
 السَّهَمَا
المدرِّس: أَلا بُدَّ منْ هذا السَّفَرَ ؟

 عَاَلَى مُعْنَرَقِ الطُّرُقِقِهِ .

Answer the following questions.





（ب）الدَّرّسُ الثالِثُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

Point out all the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b$ لَ
－花
Write the mudāri＇，the amr，the ism al－fă＇il and the masdar of each of the following verbs．
المصدَرَ


المُصَْارِعُ
يَنْتَظِرُ

انْتِظَارَر
مُنْتْظِرْ

انْتُظَرَ
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$
الْتِنُعَعُعْ

$\ldots \times \cdots$
$\qquad$

（أَضْلُهُ：التِقَايٌّ）
انْ اخْتِيَارُ
\％
$+$
$\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$
F比文
\＆－

Change the following verbs to $b \bar{a} b$ الْنْتَرَ



دَعَا

Change the following verbs to $b \bar{a} b \overrightarrow{\text { افْتْعَ }}$ ا．


Change the following verbs to $b \bar{a} b$ الْتُعَع
（إذا كَانَت فَاءُ 》افْتْعَل）واوًا أَبْدِلَتْ تاءً）．

وَقَى
$\qquad$ وَوْ
$\qquad$ وَ وَحَ

وَفِقَ

Write the original form from which each of the following verbs has been derived as shown in the example，and name the $b \bar{a} b$ ．
إْتْتَرَرَ أَصْلُهُ: نَظَرَ من باب: إِنْتُعَلَ. زيدَتْ فيهِ الهمزةُ والتَّاءُ.
，
是



等

人－مِنْ مَعَاني بَاب 》افْنْعَلَ《 المُطَُوَعُةُ، نَحْوُ：رَفَغْتُ الصَّوْتَ، فَارْتَفَعَ


 جَمَعْتُ الطُّاَّبَبَ
 المُخْتَتْفِةَهُ
Point out all the verbs belonging to bāb $b$ لَعْتُioil and their derivatives occurring in the following sentences．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( (r) } \\
& \text { • (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • (0) دَعَوْتُ اللّهَ في المُلْنَزَمَم }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. اتَّصَلْتُ بِأَبي هَاتِفِيّاً، وأَخْبَرْتُهُ بِمَوْعِلِ سَغَرِير (V) } \\
& \text { (N) } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { (9) يَتَّجِهُ المُسْلِمُونَ في صَلَوَاتِكِمْ إلَّى الكَعْبَةِ المُشَرَّفَةِّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(YY) الدَّرْمُ الثالِّثُ وَالعِشْرُوْنَ





(الصَّافات:10ب)

任 ا 11





.

(0) وفي التَّنّْيلِ في قِصَّةِ مُوسَى عَلَيْهِ السَّاَلَمُ:



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 》 إ - I } \\
& \text { الاهْتِحَانُ قَرِيب . } \\
& \text { المديرُ يَأْتِي غَداً . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Rewrite each of the following sentences using the form of indicated therein.
( ) حاملُ مريضٌ .

- أَتَطُنُ
. أَظُنُّ

$\qquad$ ظَنَنْ

(T) هُو هُوْنِمْمٌ
. هم رَاسبُون (V)
$\rightarrow$ ?
أَظُُُُّ


C أَتَطُنُ
. (1.)




وفي التنَّنِّيلِ ：



 Rewrite it again using نَّنَّ
（ ا

 المَدْخُولُ مَكاناً، نَحْوُ 》دَخَلْتُ البَيْتَ／المسْحِحَ／السُّوقَ／الْغُرْفَةَ ．．．＂ففي
التَنَّْيلِ : وَدَخَلَ جَنَّشَهُو هِ (الكهن: مب) .

ونَقُولُ：》دَخَلْتُ فِيهِ إذا لَمْ يَكُنِ المَدْخُولُ مَكَاناً، نَحْوُ：》دَخَخْتُ في الإِسلامِ ｜في الامْتْتَانِ ．．． ．


病 ا 17 صِيَّغ مُبَالَغَهِةٍ أَسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ ．

وعِنْ صِيَغِها أيضاً：
فَهِيل، نَحْوُ：رَحِيم．


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { فَعُولٌ، نَحْوُ: غَفُور. } \\
& \text { فَِِل ، نَحْوُ: حَذِر. } \\
& \text { رِفْعَال } 6 \text { نَخْوُو: مِعْطَاءاء }
\end{aligned}
$$

 with each of them.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. عَبَسَ } \\
& \text { رَزَقِ، وَهَبَ، عَلِمَ، سَمِعْ، أَكَكَكَ، }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { سَمِمِّ، قَلَرَك عَلِمَّ، بَصَرَ. } \\
& \text { صُغْ صِيغَةُ 》ْفَوْولٍ } \\
& \text { غَفرَ، شَكرَّ، صَبَرَ، عَبَسَ، أَكَكَهِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(Y (Y) الدَّرْمُ الرَّابُعُ وَالُعِشْرُونَ

الملدِّس : افْتْحَح النَّافِذَةَ يا عليّ •
 المدرِّس: ألَا يُمْاكِنُ تَقْوِمُمُ اَعْوِجَاجِهِ
علي : حَاوَنْاَا ولَمْ نَتَمَكَّنْ مِنْ ذَلِكَكَ الملدرِّ : وَجْهُك مُحْمَرَّ يا أحممل . كَأَنَّك غَضْبَبَانُ .

 الحُجُجرَاتِ:
 جَعْغَر: بَلَى . أسْتَغْفِرُ اللَّهَ واتَّوبُ إليْهِه.
 يَجْجُ عَلَيْكَكَ أَنْ تَجْتَهِلَّ

أيّوبُ : إن شاء اللهّ . المدرِّس: اقورأ لآيَّ يا حامد.

 $\sqrt{(1)}$ (.v (1-V6) • 7 :

المدرِّس: اقرأ الحَديثَ يا أَّوُوب.
أَئّوب : عَنْ

يَزهُو ؟ قَال: يَحْمَارَّ أَْْ يَصْفَارُّها .
(يَدْخُلُ المُرَرَقِبُ)



Answer the following questions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ) لِمَ لَا تَنْفَتِحُ نَافِذَةُ الَْصْلِ } \\
& \text { (Y) لِمَ غَضِبَ أححملُ على جَعْغَرٍ ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { أَيْنَ وُجِدَتِ السَّاعةُ ؟ وَوَتَى ؟ }
\end{align*}
$$



 الالَّاُُُوِيَّأْتي في الأَلْْوَانِ
 lesson.
Write the mud̄āri', the maṣdar and the ism al-fá 'il of each of the following verbs.


c, iss.


إِحْمِرَارْ
يَحْمَرُ

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

$\qquad$
$\qquad$
$\qquad$

$\qquad$

$\qquad$
$\qquad$

$\qquad$
 Write the mudāri', maşdar and the ism al-fá'il of each of the following verbs.


إِفْفَارَّ
$\qquad$

$\qquad$

$\qquad$
$\qquad$


Specify the bub of each of the following verbs.


 sentences.
正
(9) في الحديثِ: »اإنَّ أوَّلَ وَقْتِ صَلاةِ العَصْرِ حِينَ يَدْخُلُ وَقْتُها، وإِنَّ اَخِرَ
وَقْتِها حِينَ تَصْغَرُّ الشَّمْسُ، •



》 - V
 أنَتَ ضَعِيفُ .



$\qquad$ أَرَارَا

أَنْتَ مُسْتَنَعْحِلُ .
$\qquad$


هُوَ حَرِينٌ .
$\qquad$

 الإشفَاقَ، نَحْوُ:


يُخْشَى أَنْ نَكْرَهُهُوا .



 تُنْسِسَهِ خَبرُّها


（Y الدَّرْمُ الرَّابُعُ وَالعِشْرُونَ








$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) عَسَيْتَ أنَ تَعُودَ غَداً . } \\
& \text {. عَسَى اللهُ أَنْ يَنْفِرَ لَ لَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (乏) كيف الطالباتُ الجُلُدُد ؟ عَسَينَ أن يَنْهَمْنَ الدُّرُوسَنَ }
\end{aligned}
$$



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) عسى أن نُقْبْلَ في الدِّراسات العُلْيا . } \\
& \text { (Y) عَسَى أَنْ تُسَافِرِي غَدَاًَ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (乏) عَسَى أَنْ يَتَّحِحَ المُسْسْلِمُونَ }
\end{aligned}
$$




Use عَسَى in two sentences of your own．It should be näqiṣah in the first and tāmmah in the second．

 يَعْنِي : بَعْلَ أْنِتْهاءِ الصَّلامِ



- ا ا ا -

Give the mudāri' of each of the following verbs.
 What is the meaning of الوَوْْْنَّ

(Y0) الدَّرْسُ الحَامِسُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

 زَكَكِيَّا:



أَنَطْرَتُ


لاسْتِقْبَلِ رَئيسِهِمْ
 مَرْوَانُ:


مُحْرَّمَاً، فَاْلَ تَظَاَلَّوُوا .

 أُطْعِمْكُمْمْ


يا عِبَادِي! إِنَّكُمْ تُخْطِئُونَ بِاللَّيَّلِ والنَّهَارِ، وَأَنَا أَغْفِرُ لَكُمُ الذُّنُوبَ
جَمِيعاً، فأُستغْفِرُوني، أَغْفْرْ لَكْمْ ...

المدرِّس: الآنَ تَاتْتْيْ وَقَدِ أْنْهَى الدَّرْسُ أو كَادَ
 الدُسْتَشْفْىَى العَامِّ
 عبلُ الملاكِ: نعم، اِسْتَأْنَنْتُهُ قَبْلَ الذَّهَّابِ، فَأَذِنَ لي

حاملٌ: -أَسْتَحْيِي
المدرِّس : قُقْ ولا تَسْتَحْحِ
حامد: يُقْرِضُوني. فَهَلْ يُمْكَنْنِي أَنْ أَقْتَرِضَ مِنْك

المدرِّس: نعمّ إنْ شاء اللهّ .

المدرِّس: إذَنْ أَنْتَظِرَك

(Y0) الدَّرْنُ الـخَامِسُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { المدرِّس: بلى } \\
& \text { حامد: عَسَى أَنْ تَكُونَ مُسْتَرِيحاً فيه. } \\
& \text { المدرِّس: نعم. الحمدُُ لله. } \\
& \text { Answer the following questions. } \\
& \text { تَمَارِينُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ? (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$



Write the muḍāri', the amr and the maṣdar of each of the following verbs.


Point out the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b \bar{J} \mathcal{J}$ sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ( ) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$









(ب) ابْتْتَهْ كَيْ تَنْجَحَح
 لِكَيْلا تَنْسَيْ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (هـ) أَسرعِوا لِكَيْلَ تَفُوتُنَا الطَّأَرِّةُ . }
\end{aligned}
$$


Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with changes.


.


》 -


 خالدٌ: إِذَنْ أَنْتْظِرَكَ
الطُّاُّبُ : إِذَنْ نَشْتُرِيَهُ .
(Y) علي : يُصِلُ أُستاذُنا غَداً إلى المَحِينَةِ المنوَّرَةِ إن شاء اللّه.
زُمَاَؤُهُهُ: إِذَنْ نَسْتَقْبِلَه في المَطَارِا
(ع) المدرِّس : أخْشَى أَنْ يُطْوَى قَيْلُكَ، فَإنَّ غِيابَكَ كَيرٌ".
حامد: إذَنْ لَا أَغِيبَ في المُسْتَقْبْل إن شاء اللهّ.
تَّصِبِ 》
أَنْ نَكُونَ مُتَصَاِِّرَةً .
(ب) أَنْ تَكُونَ غَيْرَ مَفْصُولَةٍ عَنِ الفِعْلِ بِغَيْرِ القَسَمَ، ولا النَّافِيَةِة .
(ج) أَنْ يَكُونَ زَمَنُ النِعْلِ مُسْتَقْبَلاً.

Use إِذَ in three sentences of your own.

Oral exercise: Each student says something, and his colleague replies to him using إِذَنْ.

Negate both the verbs in each of the following sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. التَّنْ يِلِ } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { انْفِ الفِعْلَينِ في كُلِّ جُمْلةٍ مِمَّا يَأَتي بِبلا }
\end{aligned}
$$


(1) قرأت الدرس و كتبته .
(Y) رَأَيْتُهُهُ وَلَّمْتُهُه.
(
( ) أَكَلَنا وشَرِبْنا.



Rewrite the following sentences changing the subordinate nominal sentences to verbal sentences.


( ( $)$






 الَحْمُ حَرَا
（Y0）اللَّزَّنُ الـَخَامِسُ وَالعِشْرُونَ
وفي التَّنّْيل ：
（1）
－范
－（19：（نُوْ（r） ．（ $11 \wedge:$ ：هو（ هُ

》


四
（الانَّعْامُ：））．
Specify the meaning of جَجْ in each of the following sentences．

（1（ ）جَعَلَ المدرِّسُ يَشرَحُ الدَّرَّسَ ．
．．（Y）


 عَصَايَّ فَتَايَ．دُنْيَايَ．يَدَايَ．غَسَلْتُ يَدَيَّ
YlN
(ب) الَّرَّنُ الـَحَامِسُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

Write the mudāri' of each of the following verbs.



Specify the $b a \bar{b} b$ of each of the verbs occurring in the hadith of Abū Dharr.

Write the singular of الحوائِجر and الشُّرطة and the plural of الحَّ

What is the original form of 1

Write the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of عَارِ/عُعَاةٌ.
 (Y)



$$
\text { (ع) (إذنْ ، وهي حرف جَوابٍ وجَزاءٍ ونصتٍ وآستقبالٍ } 6 \text { نَحْوٌ: }
$$


(Y) الدَّرْسُعُ السَّادِسُُ وَالعِشْرُونَنَ



 بِالِإِنَاْحَم.





المدرِّس: هَذَا هُوَ السَّبَبُ ... اقْرَأُ الآيَاتِ يا أحمدُ.

أححملُ:







(يَلْخُلُ رَجُلٌ" ويُشَلِّمُ)
 لَكَيْهِ سُوَّالٌ فَلْيْسَأَلْهُ .
حامد: اَسْمَهَ لَدَيْكَ الآنَ ؟

 آتاكمُ الللّهُ . مَنْ أَرَادَ أَنْ يُسَاعِدَهُمْ فَلْيَتَّصِلْ بِأَمِينِ صُنْدُوقِقِ الِبِّ.

Answer the following questions.


Point out the rub's verbs and their derivatives occurring in the main lesson, and specify the $b \bar{a} b$ of each of them.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( }(\text { ( })
\end{aligned}
$$

 ．
Write the mudāri＇and the masdar of each of the following verbs．

．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．
$\qquad$
E，Lip ll
يُترْنْمْ
．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．．
$\qquad$

## $\ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots$

4

اطِمَانَّ
男
为


䫆

Point out the rub add verbs and their derivatives in the following sentences，and specify the $b \bar{a} b$ of each of them．

．
（（ ）
 عمران：1／1）．


 (V) خَرَجَتْ خَطَايَاهُ مِن أَنْفِهِ وَفَمِهِ (رواهِ الإمامُ أحمداً) .













(Y7) المَّرْنُ السَّادِسُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (البقرة (أ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هِ هُلْ0ِ هِيَ السَّيَّارةٌ . } \\
& \text { • ( ( ) انْتَخْ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Point out all the instances of ضَمْمِيرُ الفصْلِ occurring in the main lesson.

Rewrite each of the following sentences making the khabar definite with al-, and make the necessary changes.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) كُلْ مِنْ هَذا. } \\
& \text { (Y) مِنَ الطُّاّبِ مَنْ يَعْرِفُ الاِنْكِلِيرِيَّة، وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ يَعْرِنُ الفِرَنْسِيَّةَ. } \\
& \text { قا ( } \\
& \text {. ( } 1 \text { (البقرة) } \\
& \text { (البقرة: ( ) ( ) } \\
& \text { • (0) أنتَ عِنْ أَحْسَنِ الطّاُّلْ }
\end{aligned}
$$

（Y7）النَّرْسُ السَّادِسُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

．（1）0：（1）
（1．9：（1）（Y）


（ro：




$$
\cdot \lg j^{2} 5^{0} j
$$

 －《回
Write the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of fa＇la．



صَرِيع
》 ا 1．


يَيُجوزُ في يَائِهِ خَمْسةُةُ أَْْجُهِ، وَهِيَ:




يا رَبَّاهْ.
(0) قَلْبُ الياءِ أَلِفاً، وَحَذْفُها، والانْتِنْنَاءُ عَنْهَا بِالفَتْحَةِ، نَحْوُ: يَا رَبَّ .

 - IT


What is the singular of الجُجُودُ



To which $b \bar{a} b$ does each of the following verbs belong?

任 17
》مَيَّقَى الإِنْامُ ما بَقِقيَ العالَمُّه أي مُدَّةَ بَقَاءِ العَالَمِ.


bdd
ๆ 「"َ
(TV) السَّرْمُ السَّابُعُ وَالعِشْرُونَ
(YV) الدَّرّسُ السَّابُع وَالعِشْرُونَ
المدرِّس: يا أُسَحَامَة، المُراقِبُ يَطْلْبُكُ في مَكْتَبِهِ.
أُسَمَامَة : أُرِيلُ أَنْ آخُخَ مَعِي زَمِيلَيَّ هَذَيْنِّ المدرِّس: لم يَطْلُب المراقِبُ إلّا إِيَّاكَ .
 المدرِّس: خُخْهُمَا إذاً ... أين كتابُ المُّدِيرِ يا إبراهيمُ ؟ إبراهيم: أَعْطَيْتُهُ إِيَّاهُ .
المدرِّس: وأين دفَاتِرُ الطُّسَّاب ؟ إبراهيم: أَعْطَيْتُهُمْ إِيَّاهَا . المدرِّس: وأين مَجَلَّلِّي ؟ إبراهيم: أَعْطَيْتُكَهَا
المدرِّس: متى أَعْطَيْتَنِيهِا ؟
إبراهيم: أَعْطَيْتُكَهَا أَمْس في مَكْتَبكَ . أَخَذْتْهَا وَوَضَعْتْهَا في الدُّرْجِ المدرِّس: نعم، الآنَ تَذَكَّْتُ ... مَا آْمْمُكُ يا أَخِي ؟ هو: أَإِيَّايَ تَسْأَلُ يا أستاذ ؟ المدرِّس: نَعَمْ، إِيَّاكِ أَسْنَأَلُ
 من بَلَدِي. هُمْ في فَصلٍ آَخَرَ. يا أستاذ، أَرْجُو أَنْ
(YV) الدَّرْنُ السَّابُعُ وَالِشْرُونَن

تُسَاعِدَنِي فَقَدْ فَاتَتْنِي دُرُوسٌٌ كَثِيرةٌ.
المدرِّس: سَسَأُسَاعِلُكَ وَوْيَّاهُمْمْ إن شاء اللّهُ . عُكاشَةُ: لَنْ نَنْسَى مُسَاعَدَتَكَ إِيَّانَا أَبَداً إن شاء الْ اللهُ . المدرِّس: أَرَاكَ تُحِيلُ اللُّغَةَ العَرَبِيَّة. مَنْ عَلَّمَكَك إِيَّاهَا ؟

عكاشة: عَعَلَّمَنِي إيَّاهَا أَبِي المدرِّس: اقْرأِ الآيَاتِ يا حَامد انِين

(الفاتحة: 0)
(الإسراء:Y)
.
(يُسْمَعُع رَبْينُ الجَرَسِسِ)
حامل: هَنَا يَوْمُ زِيارَةِ المدرِّسِينَ إِيَّانا في المَهْجَعِع نَنْتْظِرُ المديرَ وإِيَّاكَ
 المدرِّس: سَنَزُورُكُمْ إن شاء اللهُ .

تَّهـارِبن

Answer the following questions.
 فَالّْسِيبِّ .

- مُلمِ (1)

次
في : رَأينّه .
: áleqeriall
هُوَ


.
(Y) وَاوٌ الحَمَاعَةِة كَمَا في : ذَهَبُوا. يَلْهَبْون . الْهَبُوا.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1 ) ما آنْمُ الطّالِبِ الجحليِِ ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (T) نا نَا كَمَا في: ذَهَهْنَا }
\end{aligned}
$$

 إِيَّاكُنَّ / إيَّايَيَ إيَّانَا .
ضَمَائِرُ النَّصْبِ الْمُتُّصِلَّةُ :



 ضَمَاَيرُرُ الكَجرِّ:

Point out all the pronouns occurring in the main lesson, and specify the category to which each of them belongs.
r - يُؤْتَى بِضَّمِيرِ النَّصْبِ مُنْفَصِلاً:
إذا كَان الضَّمِيرَانِ مِنْ رُتْتُةٍ وَاحِلَةٍ وَجَبَ الفَصْلُ كَمَا في الِمَّالِل السَّابِقِ. وَإِذَا
اَخْتَنَفَا في الرُتْتُبَهِ جَازَ الوَصْلُ وَالفَصْلُ، نَحْوْ:

(ج) رُتْبَةٌ المُتَكاكِّمَ وَضَمَائرُها : أَنَاك نَحْنْ

- مِنْهِا مُنْفَصِصِا

Point out all the separate pronouns of nasb occurring in the main lesson and mention the reason for their being separate.
 Rewrite the following sentences placing the pronoun of nassb before the verb in each of them.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (0) (0) }
\end{aligned}
$$

(TV) الدَّرّسُ السَّابُِ وَالعِشْرُونَ


Rewrite the following sentences using إِّسَ as shown in the example.
مَا رأَْيْتُ إِلَّا إِيَّهُ .
(1) رَأَيْتُـُهُ
(Y) نَنْبُده (Y)
. يُ يُحِبُّني المدرِّنِّ



Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the type of pronoun mentioned in brackets.

(1)

(Y) إنَّ

(0) أَعْرِنُ انَنَّكَ و وَمِيرُ الغَائِبِ) V
Rewrite the following sentences using maşdar.

> نَنْتَطِرُ زِيَارَةَ المدير إيَّانَانَا .

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Answer the following questions using two pronouns of naṣb as shown in the example．
أَغْطَيْتُهُ إيَّاهُ .
(1 ) أين كتابُ المديرِ؟
(Y) أين مَجَلَّة المدرِّسِ ؟
( أين قَلَمُ الأُخْتِ ؟
(६) أين دَفَاتِرُ الطُّسّابِبِ ؟
(0) أين دَفاتِرُ الاََخَوَاتِ ؟
(7) أين حَقِيبَةُ أُمُّي ؟
أين بَرْمِيَّتا حامٍ ؟ (V)
$\qquad$
أين رَسائِلٌ المدرِّسينَ ؟ (へ)

Answer the following questions using two pronouns of nașb as shown in the example．

（1（ ）مَنْ عَلَّمَكَ قِيادَةَ السَّيّارةِ ؟
（Y）مَنْ أَعْطَاكَ هَذْا الخَاتَّمَ ؟
（
（乏）


Oral exercise：Each student says to another：

And the other says：＇Yes，give it to him．＇or，
لا لَ' لتُقْطِهِ إِيَّاهُ
．《《يلِّ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (YV) السَّرّسُ السَّابِعُ وَالعِشْرُونَ } \\
& \text { 人 - أَجْبْ عَنِ الأَسِئَةِ الاَتِيَةِ عَلَّلَ غِرَارِ المِمَّالِ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

(YV) النَّرّسُ السَّابُع وَالِشِشْرُونَ

Write the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fa'tl.


Give the plural of الُُُّّجُ and النُمُ
ّا - هَاتِ المضَارِعَ والأَمْرَ من الأَفْعَالِ الاَتِيَةِة .

Write the muḍari 'and the amr of each of the following verbs.
تَذَكرَّ، قَضَى، بَسْمَلَ

(Y人) الدَّرْسُ الثَّامِنُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

حامد: قُدُوماً مُبَارَكاً يا أستاذ. مَتَى قَدِمْتَ مِنَ السَّفَرِّه
 وَخَفِّفْ سُرعَةَ المِرْوَحَةِ حَمْزة: أَتَكْفِي هَذَنِهِ السُّرْعَةُ ؟















حاملٌ:
 المدرِّس: يا أحمد. أحمد: كَيَّيْنَ يَ يا أستاذ.
 أَحمد: سَمْعْاً وَطَاعَةً .
 أسامة: مَهْلاً يا أستاذاذ كَمَّا نَسْتَعِدَّ.


Answer the following questions.


( ( )




والثَّاني، نَحْوُ: ضَرَبَنِي الوَلَكُ ضَرَباتٍ .




مَفْعُولٌ مُطلَقِّ، مِنْها :


- آَخَذَني المدِيرُ بعضَ المُؤُاخَذَةِةِ

ـ أَعْرُفهُ كُلَّ المَمْرِفَةِةِ
-

- أَيَّ نَوْمٍ تَنَامُ
( الدَّرْنُ الثَّامِنُ وَالعِشْرُونَ




 (N) يَجُوزُ حَذْفُ عَامِلِ المفْعُولِ المُطُلْقِ الدَالِّ عَلَى النَّوْعِ والَِاَدِّ نَحْوُوُ:

 هِنْهَا
Point out all the instances of maf'ul mutlaq occurring in the main lesson, and specify the signification of each of them.

ع - عَيِّنِ المَفْعُولِ المُطُلْقَ فِيما يَأْتي، وَاْذْكُرْ نَوْعَهُ .
Point out the instances of maf'īl mutlaq occurring in the following sentences, and specify the signification of each of them.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • (Y) } \\
& \text { 居 }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } \\
& \text {. (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$



$$
\text { (الفَجْرُ } 9 \text { ( } 9 \text { ) }
$$



قَال الشَّاعِرُ:
فَمَا نَيَلُ الخُلُوحِ بِمُسْنَطَاعِاٍ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { فَصَبْر ا فَي مَجَالِ المَوْتِ صَبْرٍ اً } \\
& \text { حَجّاً مَبْرُوراً ( } 1 \text { ( ) } \\
& \text { (9) (1) تَلَّ الإمامُ تلاوةً جميلةً }
\end{aligned}
$$

- ه - عَيِّن النَّائِبَ عَنِ المصْنَرِ فِيمَا يَأْتْي

Point out words deputizing for the masdar in the following examples of the maf'ul mutlaq.

ماجه).
. (النساء: (Y) (Y)
(
( ) أيَّ كِتابةٍ تَكتْنُ
. . .... (يُوئف : .

(V)

(9) قَالَ الشَّاعِرُ:



النَّأْكِيدِ
Complete the sentence ．${ }^{2}$ with with three instances of maf＇ül mutlaq．In the first instance it should specify the number，in the second the type of action and in the third it should signify emphasis．
V - هَاتِ مِنَّالاً لِكُلّ مَا يَنُوبُ عَنِ المَصْدَرِ الوَاقِعِ مَفْعُولا مُطْلْقَاً.

Mention all the words that deputize for the maṣdar in the maf＇ull mutlaq．

Give three examples of the maşdar which functions as a substitute for the verb．
审》－－



الصَّلَاِِ عَلَى الديِّتِ.


صُغْ مَصـَرَ المرَّةِ مِنَ الأَنَّعَالِ الاَتِيَّةِ:

Derive the mașdar al－marrah from each of the following verbs．

等




 .(V،7:القارعة)
وفي الحَديثِ: 》فَإذَا قَتَلْتُمْ فَأَحْسِنُوا القِتْنَةَهِ، .



كِيلَةٍ ؟)
وَقال الشَّاعِرُ:
غَدَا، واللَّيُّْ غَضْبَانُ
مَشَيْنَا مِشْيَةَ اللَّنَّثِ
(اللَّيْشُ : الأَسَدُ. ج جُيُوشٌ .
 Derive the masdar al-hai'ah from each of the following verbs.



- 11
 ووْوعِد
 .مُنْخَل، مُخْرَ





》 - Ir (أ) مُصدَرْ مِنْ بَابِ مُخْتَلِقِ، نَحْوُ:




$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { تَبَسَّمْنُ الْتِسْامَاًَ . }
\end{aligned}
$$


 فَاعُعُلُّ"، يَنُوبُ عَنْ 》تَعَالٍٍ .

إِيَّكَ أمثلة أخرى:
أُحِبُّ اللهُ حُبًّا جَمّاً.
انشَرَيْتُ السَّاعَةَ شِراءِ
تُوُفِّيَ فُلانْ وَوَاةُ طَبِيعَيَّةً
(ra) الدَّرْمُ التَّاسِعُعُوَالعِشْرُونَ
(Yq) الدَّرّْسُ التَّاسِعُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

المدرِّس: لِمَ تَنْظُرُ في السَّاعَةِ الفَيْنَةَ بَعْدَ الفَيْنَةِ يا عَدْنَان ؟


الطَبَّبِب بَعْدَ قَلِيلٍ
المدرِّس: هَنَّلَ غِبْتَ عَن هَلِهِ الحِصَّةِ
 وَلَكِنَّنِي حَضَرْتُ حُبّاً لِلنَّحْوِ
 في العِلْمِ، لَا رَهْبَةً من الامْتِحَانِ .. اقْرَأِ الآياتِ يا إبراهيمُ .

 Q (البقرة: 19 )
居


.




المر|قب: هَلَّا تَشْكُوهُ إلى المدير .


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { تَقَارِِينُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Answer the following questions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ) لِيَمَيْنَرُرُ عَدْنَانُ في السَّاعَةِ مِرَاراً ؟ } \\
& \text { (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Point out all the instances of maf 'ul lahu occurring in the main lesson.
(Yq) الَّسَّرْهُ التَّاسِعُ وَالعِشْرُونَ

Point out all the instances of maf"ill lahu in the following sentences.

( $\mathrm{Y} \cdot \mathrm{V}:$ (البقرة)
-
-


O
بالشَّكْلِ
Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets making it maf"ül lahu.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ( ) لَمْ أَخرُجْ مِنَّ البَيْتِ اليَّْمَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) } \\
& \text { - }
\end{aligned}
$$


وإذا دَخَكْتْ عَلَى المَّاضِي كَانَتْ لِجَعْلِ المَاعِلِ يَنْدَمُ عَلَى فَوَاتِ الأَمْرِ، نَحْوُ:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the singular of each of the following nouns.
-

Oral exercise: Every student uses the expression وَأْبِي وَدَيَّنَئن in a sentence.


 tandìm.



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 》أي غَيْرَ جُمْملةٍ،"، وَيَكُونُ بَعْدَ الإِيجابِ أَوِ الأَمْرِهِ نَحْوُ: }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (ب) اسألِ المليرَّ لاَ الملرِّسَّ } \\
& \text { كُلِ الثُّفُّاحَ، لَا الَمَوْزَ }
\end{aligned}
$$



 مُحْْْلِفَةِ



المدرِّس: إِرْرَأْ هذه الآياتِ يا زُهَيْرُ زُهَيْر: حاملٌ:



قُلُوبَنَا بَهْجَجةً وسُرُوراً ... الِقْرَأً الحديث يا عليّ .




Answer the following questions
 (Y) مَنِ النَِّي كَتَبَ الآياتِ عَلَى السَّبُّورة ؟
(Y) مَنِ النَّنِي قَرَأَها ؟
. Y

(1) عِنْلِي مِنْرٌ حَرِيراً.
(Y) حَسُنَ حاملٌ خُحُقُاً.

فَتَقْدِيرُ الجُجْمْتَيْنِ :
( ( ) عِنْدِي مِتْرٌ مِنْ حَرِيرٍ

النَّهِييزُ نَوْعَانِ :
. (1)
. تَمييزُ النِّسِبَةِ (Y)
تَتْيييزُ النَّاتِ :
هو الوَاقِعُ بَعْدَ المَقَادِيرِ، والمَقَادِيرُ أَرْبَعَةُ أَنْواع:
(1) العَدَدُ، نَحْوُ:

كَمْ كِتَابًاً قَرَأْتَ ؟
(r) المَمْسُوحَاتُ، نَحْوُ: عِنْدِي ذِرَاعُ أَرضاً.
(Y) المَكِيالاتُ، نَحْوُ: أَعْطْيَتْهُ صَاعاً تَمْرُ أ.
(乏) المَوْزُوناتُ، نَحْوُ: أَعْنْدَكَ رِطْرٌ سَمْناً ؟
ويُلْحَقُ بِهِ الدَّالُّ عَلَى ما يُشْبِهُ المِقْدَارَكَ، نَحْوُ:
(1) مَا فِي السَّمَاءِ قَدْرُ رَاحَةٍ سَحَابًا.
(Y) عِنْدِي جرَّةٌ ماءًا. أرِيدُ كِيساً دَقِقِقاً.
يَجُجوزُ نَصْبُهُ نَحْوُ: عِنْدِي مِتْرٌ حَرِيراً ا.

》مِمْءُ كَفٍِّ مِنْ دَمٍ (البَاري، الأحكام:9).
تَمبييز الْنِّسْبَةِ: :

 لإِزَالةِ هَذَا الإِْْهَامْ
 نُحُقُ الطَّألبِ.



Point out all the instances of tamy $\bar{z} z$ occurring in the main lesson and specify its kind in each of them.
\& - عَيِّنِ التَّسِييزَ فِيمَا يَلِي، واَذْكُرْ نَوْعَهُ .

Point out the tamyiz in the following sentences and specify its kind.

Complete each of the following sentences with a suitable tamyiz.
$\qquad$ (1) اشْتَرَيْتُ مِتْرا
$\qquad$
(r) اِمْانُ الكُوبَ
$\qquad$ (Y) حاملُّ أكْثْرُ الطُّاَّابِ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) (1 أَنَا أكْبْرُ هِنْكَ سِنَّا }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (التوبة:79) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$؟$ $\qquad$

 Change the tamyiz to majirïr in the following sentence．
號－V
وَزْنِ 》فُقْل《 :

Write the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fir $\%$

Oral exercise：Each student says ．．．using an appropriate tamyiz．
－ 9 مَا أَجْمَلَ السَّيّارةًا أَجْمْلْ بالسِيَّارةِ！
في النَّزْيِلِ:



Rewrite each of the following sentences using both the forms of fill al－ta＇ajjub．

Use the word 《s $\varepsilon$ lol 》 in five sentences on the pattern＇I want a fistful of sugar＇．
أُرِيلُ مِلْءَ كَفٍِ سُكَّاًَ.
Yos

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. سُهُولَةُ اللُّغَةِ العَرَبِّةِ (Y) } \\
& \text { • كَثْرَةُ النُّجومِ } \\
& \text { ( ) (0) حُسْنُ اللنَّنِّ } \\
& \text { - بُعْلُ السَّها } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$




المدرِّس: مَا لَكَ مُتْعَباً يا أححملُ ؟
أححملُ: المدرِّس: أين سَمِيرٌ ؟
علي:
المدرِّس : وأين زُهَيرٌ وصَدِيقَاهُ ؟





.
(الحجرات:1Y) .
المدرِّس: أِرْرَأ الحَدِيثَ يا عليّ .



البخاري).


Answer the following questions
الكحالٌ: وَصْفُ فَضْلَةٌ يُنْ كَرٌ لِبَيَانِ هِيْئةِ صَاحِبِهِ نَحْوٌ :

إمّا فَاعِلٌ، نَحْوُ: خَرَجَ الطُّأَّبُ مِنْ قَاعَةِ الامْتِحَانِ مَسْرورِينَ

rol

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) (1 لِمَاذَا كان أحمـلُ ٌتْتْبَباً ؟ } \\
& \text { (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { جَاءَ حاملُ رَاكِباً دَرَّاْجَتَهُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { : لll líg }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الملـرِّ : إِّرَاُ البَيْتَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أبو بكر: } \\
& \text { وَالمَوْتُ نَحْوَكِ يَهْوِي فَاتِحاًا فَاهُ }
\end{aligned}
$$


وإمَّا مَفْعُولٌ



وَهُوَ أَحَحُ أُمُوْرٍ أَرْبَعَةٍ


النُرُوِجِ.جَاءَني طَبيبُ أَسْنانٍ مُسْتَنْنِياً.


( ( ) .
》(صَلَّى رَسُولُ اللهُ

الحَحالُ الكُحْْمَلُّهُ :



 (البقرة: (Y $)$

Point out all instances of hāl occurring in the main lesson.
\& - عَيِّنِ الحَالَ وَصَاحِحَها فِيما يَلي .

Point out the hāal and the șāhib al-hāl in the following sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (9) لِمَ صَلَّيَّتَ قاعِداً ؟ }
\end{aligned}
$$



- (1.)



(الأنبياء:7 1) .
- o

Complete each of the following sentences with the hāl used in the example after making necessary changes.


Point out the $h \bar{a} l$-sentence and the $r a \bar{b} b i t i t$ in each of the following sentences.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) حَجَجْتُ وأَنَا صَغِيرٌ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { خَرَجْنَا نَتَتَنَّهُهُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (0) جَلَسَتِ الطَّالَبَاتٌ يَكْتْبْنَ الوَاحِبَاتِ }
\end{aligned}
$$




V - يَقُولُ كُلُّ طالٍٍ : جَلَسْتُ أَقْرأٌ / أَكْتُبٌ / أَلْقُبُ .



بِفِيدِ مَا لَيْسَ في قَلْبْهِ

$$
\text { 中 } q
$$

Give the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fa'il-un.
.

Write the mudarir of each of the following verbs.

$$
\text { - } 11
$$



Give the singular of ${ }^{\circ 2}$ مأَ

عمران: (191).



عليٌّ: ما نَتِيجَةُ الاغْتِبَارِ الشهْرِيِّ يا أستاذ ؟
 إبراهيم: :أَخْشَى أَنْ أَكَوْنَ إِيَّاهُهُ المدرِّس: نعمّ، أَنْتَ ذَاكَكَ



زُهَيْرٌ: كَمْ دَرْساً نَدَرْسُسُ لِلِمْتِحَحَانِ ؟

الِْيابَ) مَنْ غائِبٌ اليومَ

زُهَيْرٌ: أين دَفْتْرِي يا أستاذُ ؟





إبراهيم: لا حَاجَةَ إلى إِعَادَةِ شَرْحِهِ يا أستاذ، فَقَلْ فَهِمْنَاهُ . عليّ: : أَرْجُو أَنْ تُعِيدَ شَرْحَهُ يا أستاذُ، فَلَمْ يَفْهَمْهُ أَحَدُ إلاّا إبراهيمُ م


 .
.
.
المدرِّس: إِرَرأ الحديثَ يا عليّ . عليّ:


وَسِلاحَهُ، وَأَرْضاً جَعَلَهَا لِاْنُْنِ السَّبِبيلِ صَدَقَةً") (رواه البخاريّ) . المدرِّس: الِرَّأِ البَيْتَ يا إبراهيم
أَلَا كُلُّ شَيٍٍْ ما خَالَا اللَّهَ باطِلُ إبراهيم : وَكُلُّ نَحِيمٍ لَاْ مَحَالَةَ زائِلُ
(يَدْخُلُ المُرَرَقِبُ)

المراقِبُ: يَنْصَرِنُ جَمِيعُ الطّلّبِ الآنَ مَا عَدا الطُّاّبَ الأُوربِّيِّينَ، فَلَهُمُ
اَاْجْتِمَاعٌ عٌ مع المدير .

المراقِبُ: كان مُمْتِعاً. قَدْ حَضَرَ الطُّلّبُ كلُّهُّمْ إلا المدرِّسِينَ

Answer the following questions.
(1) مَنِ النَِّي رَسَبَ في الاخْتِبَارِ الشَّهْرِيِّ؟ وَلِمَهْ ؟

(Y) مَنِ الَّنِي غَابَ ؟



وَلَلهُ ثَالَثَهُ أَرْمانٍ :

- (1) المُسْسْتَثْتْى
(Y) المُسْتَتْثْىَى مِنْهُ .
.



 (ج)
|





.
 حَغِظْتُ التُرْاَنَ إلاّلا سورةَ البَقَرِةِ
وَألكُفَرَّغُ: مَا لَْْ يُنْ كَرْ فِيهِ المسْتَنْثُى مِنْهُ، نَحْوُ مَا جَاءَ إلَّا حامِلٌ .
.
 وَغَيرٌ المُوْجَب: مَا تَضَمَّنَ النَّنْيَ أَوِ النَّهُيَ أَوِ الاستِفْهَامَامَ



(1) وُجُوبُ النَّصْبِ: يَجِبُ نَصْبُهُ إِذَا كَانَ الاستِثْنَاءُ تَامّاً مُوجَباً، نَبْحُ:
(أ) حَضَرَ الطُّسَّبُ إلَّا حاملاً .



الاستِثْنَاءُ تامّاً غَيْرَ مُوجَبِ، نَحْوُ:


(ج) ما اتَّصَلْتُ بالطُّاَّابِ إلَّا حامهاً / / حامرٍ .





(جـ) هل اتصلت بأحدٍ إلَّا حامهاً / حاملٍِ ؟


(مَا جَاءَ حَامِلُ) .
(أ) مَا جَاءَ إلا حاملُ.



 (أ) هِلْ جَاءَ الِّلَّا حاملّ ؟ ؟

: حُ
يَجحُ نَصْبُهُ في جَسِع الأْحْوْالِ، نَحْوُ:
(أ) حَضَرَ الطُّاّبٌ إلاّ المدرِّسَنِّ
(ب) ما حَضَرَ الطُّالّبٌ إلّا الملـرِّسَن

䧧



Point out all the instances of istithn $\bar{a}{ }^{\prime}$ occurring in the main lesson, and specify the kind in each instance (muttaṣil, munqaṭi ', mufarragh).

Point out the mustathnä and mustathna $\bar{a}$ minhu, and specify the kind of istithna ${ }^{\prime}$ ' in the following examples.

Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes.
 $\qquad$

$$
(\underline{O})
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. ( ): ( ) ( ( ) } \\
& \text {. (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • (م) جا جاء جاء (Y) } \\
& \text {. (ما مألـت إلا } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

.


Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes.


Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes

(الكَنْْْكَانُ
(
(أنا) $\qquad$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) مَا فَهِمَمَ الدَّرّْنَ إلّا } \\
& \text { (Y) ما مَاتَ في الحادِثِ الِّالِّ } \\
& \text { ( } \\
& \text { ( ) هَلْ يَرْمُبُبُ إلّا }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (7) مَا مَأَلَّلَ المدرِّنِّ إلّْ }
\end{aligned}
$$

（ الدَّرَّنُ النَّانِي وَالشَّاَثُونُنَ
(مْمَدرَّرِّن)
(V) مَا كُنْ إِلّا
－人
Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets，and make the necessary changes．


Complete each of the following sentences with a suitable mustathn $\bar{a}$ ．

Write the plural of each of the following nouns．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {.ar (r) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (乏) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { : . . . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - } 11
\end{aligned}
$$



Write the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fa'l-un.

r

What is the meaning of الأَكُّ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of دَنانِيرُ.
دِيوان، قِيراط، دِيمَاس.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هَاءَ مِثَالَين آخَرَيْنِ: } \\
& \text { (أ) أَكُنْتَ إمامَ هنَا المسْنِحِحِ }
\end{aligned}
$$





 قَالَ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ:



النَّاسَ إِلَى دِينِ اللَّهِ.
 عليّ:









عليّ:
الجَزَاءِ.
المدرِّس: الِقْرَأُ الآياتِ يا عبدَ اللهِّهِ





 التُّرَابَ وَهْوَ يَقُولُ :
وَاللَّهِ وَوْلَا اللّْهُ مَا أَهْتَيْيْنا
وَلَا صُـمْنـا وَلَا صَالَّهِيْنـا


وَالمُشْرِ كُونَ قَدْدْ بَبَوْا عَلَيْنَا
إِذَا أَرَارَوُوا فِتْنْتَ أَبْيْنَا
(البخاري).


. 1




(ب)
الِذْمَوا: : الِذْهُنَّ
لِ تَ تَهْمَوا:

تَنْهُبُونَ:
$(\rightarrow)$


لا تَنَهْبَا: لا تَنْهَبَانِّ


الْْهَبْنَ:
لا تَنْهْبَنْ:



Make the following verbs emphatic using the nün al-taukīd al-thaqïlah.







بِ


(أ) أَنْ يَكُوْنَ مْتُنْبُتَاً .
(ب) صُسْتَقْبَالْ "
(ج) غَيْرَ مَفْصُولٍ مِنْ لَام الكَجَابِ بِفَاصِلٍ، نَحْوُ:


(أ) وَالللَهِ لَا أَخْرُجُ
(ب) وَاللّهِ لَأُحِبُّك.

 وَوْا جَازَ
Point out all the instances of nün al-taukīd occurring in the main lesson and mention in which of them the use of the $n \bar{u} n$ is optional and in which it is compulsory.

Oral exercises:



Actual verbs like لَا تَجِلسْ، إِجْسِنْ، لَ تْفتَحْ، الْتَحْ should be used.
。
Rewrite each of the following sentences making it jawāb al-qasam and make necessary changes.

Write the mudāri ${ }^{\prime}$ and the amr of each of the following verbs.

人

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • (0) } \\
& \text { (7) سَوْفْ أُعْطِياكَ كِتاباً دُعِيلاً . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ع - تَمْرِين شَفَوِيٌّ }
\end{aligned}
$$



المدرِّس: أين وِلْيَمْ ؟
بالالٌ: المدرِّس: كيف حَالُ جُرْجِ اليَوْمَ


َيَرِيدُ:

 الدَّفَاتِرِ
 الدَّرّْسَ يا مَرْوْان .
مَرْوَانُ:





عُمَرَ:



( 0 : :


طلحة: مَا مَعْنَى 》قَوْسِ قُزُحَّ يا أستاذ ؟

نُوحْ:
المدرِّس: هُوَ أَحَحُ الكَوَّاكِبِ.
(يَلْخُلُ شَابُّ)


 شاهُ:
(يَدْخُلُ المُرَرِقُبُ)
المراقب: أفي الفصْل كرَاسِيُّ وَهَكاتِبُ كافِيَّةٌ ؟


الملرِّس: لا، نَحْتَاجُ إِلى ثَاِثَةِ مَكَاتِبَ أُخَرَه المراقب: (مُسَارًا) يَسْألُ المديرُ عَنْ وِلْيَمَ ؟ المدرِّس: قُقُْ لَلُ إِنَّهُ مِنْ أَحْسَنِ طُلَّابِ الفَصْلِلِ (يُسْمَعُ رَنِينُ الجَرَسِي)


- مَثْنْى
 يَلْحَقُُه التَنْوِينُ
وَهُوَ عَلَى نَوْعَيْنِ: نَوْعٍ يُمْنَعُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ لِعِلَّةٍ وَاحِدَةٍ، وَنَوْعٍ يُمْنَعُ لِعِلَّنَيْنِ



وأَصْدَرِّاءُ.
 وو و(



طَمَاطِمُ، وبَطَاطِسُ، وطَبَاشِيريُ، وسَرَاوِيلُ


يُمْنَعُ العَلَمُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ إِّا كَانَّنَ : (1)



: (Y)
إبراهيمُ، وباكِسْتَانُ، ولَنْدَنْنُ .










مَرْوَانُ، ورَمَضَانُ، وشَعَبْانُ، وعْثُمْانُنُ

أَأَحْمَكُ، ويَزِيدِ

مَعْدِيكَرِبُّ، وحَضْرَمَوْوُنُ
الصِّفَةُ المَمْنُوعَةُ هِنَ الصَّرْوِ
تُمْنعُ الصِّفَةُ هِنَ الصَّرْفِ إذا كَانَتْ :

أَكَبْرُ، وأَحْسَنُ، وأَحْمَرُ

: عَلَى وَزْنِ 》
















المَحْرُورُرُ: تُسْنَعْمَلُ هَذَهِهِ الكَكِمَةُ بِمَعَانٍ كَثِيرةٍ


Point out all the instances of the occurring in the main lesson, and mention the reason for their being diptotes.

$$
\text { - } \cdot
$$

Point out the occurring in the main lesson which have kasrah in the jor case, and mention the reason for that.
.

Point out the مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْزِ If they have kasrah in the jor case mention the reason for that.

$$
\text { - ( } 1: l_{0}
$$


 في الثَّالِثَةِة
 in the third.

In the sentence عَائِشَةُ عَائِشَة the first word has no tannin while the second has. Why.


Give an example of a مَمْنُوْ ع مِنَ الصَّرْوْ having kasrah in the jarr case because of its being mudāaf．

Give an example of a مَمْنُوع بِنَ الصَّرْوَ having kasrah in the jarr case because of its having a definite article．

Give an example of each of the following：
(0) العَلَم الَمَعْدُول.
(T) الصِّفَة التَّبِي عَلَى وَزْنِ 》أَفْعَلِّ .
(V) العَلَم المْنْتُوم بأَلِفٍ ونُونٍ زَائِتَتَيْنِ .
(ㅅ) العَلَم المُرَكَبَّبٌ .
(9) الجَمْع المُتَنَاهِي .
(1 ا (1) الاسْم الدخْتُوم بألفِ التَّأْيْثِثِ المقْصُورَةِ .
(I ( المنْقُوص مِنَ الجَمْع المُتْنَاهِي .
(1 العَلَمْ الأَعْجَمِي المُنْصَرِف.
 Both the proper nouns إْبْر｜هيرَ and are non－Arabic，but the first does not accept the tanwinn while the second does．Why．
(
(》- IT ولَّمْ يَنْصَرِبِ الاَخَرُ.
 the second is säkin. But the first accepts the tannin while the second does not. Why.


＊مِنْ أَنْبَيَّيْ
（1）فَعْلٌ：ضَرَبَ يَضْرِبُ：ضَرْبٌ．فَهِمَ يَفَهُمُ：فَهْمٌ．قَالَ يَقُولُ：قَوْلٌ．
غَزَا يَغْزُو：غَزْوٌ
 تَعِبَ يَتْعَبُ：تَعَبٌ．فَرِحَ يَفْرَحُ：فَرَّعٌ


 رَضِيَّ يَرضَى ：رِضًى ．
 سخِِطَ يَسْخَطُ ：سُخْطُ ．



「人七
.


(
.

هَا
(IT) فِفْالنٌ: نَسِيَ يَنْسَى: نِسْيَانٌ. حَرَمَ يَحْرِمُ: حِرْمَانٌ . رَضِيَّ يَرْضَى : رِضْوانٌ.




آبَ يَؤُوبُ: إيَّبٌ.
.


ظَرُّفَ يَظْرُفُنُ : ظَرَافَةُّ
(YY)
 فَعَالِيُةٌ: كَرِهَ يَكْرَهُ: كَرَاهِيَّةٌ . مَلِنَ يَعْلَنُ: عَلانِيَّةٌ.


غَغَاَ يَغْدُو : غُدُوٌّ.




 سَمِعْ يَسْمَعُ سَمْعْاً، وسَمَاعاًاً،

أَوْزَانُ جَمْعْع النَّكْسْسِر




أَبْنَيْنُ جُمُوع ع التِلَّةِ:
 كَفُقٌ أَكَفُقٌ





.


 كُّرٌ.




 الَأَمْمَ







 شَاهِلٌ شُهُورٌ.
ra.









فَارِسٌْ فَوَارِسُ .

 فَا (Y.)
 (Y)


فَعَالِيلُ : قِنْدِيل قَنَادِيلُ . قِرْطَاسٌ قَرَاطِيسُ . عُصْفُورٌ عَصَافِيرُ، فِنْجَانٌ فَنَاجِينُ .













لِكُلِّ وَاحِدٍ مِنْهُمَا بِآَيةٍ


وبَصْدَرَهُ الحِيمِيَّ
 ومَصْمَرَزَهُ واَنْمَ فَاعِلِهِ








(VY:(1)



س ه: أَعْرِبْ ما طُعَعَ بالأَحْمَرْ فِيما يَاتِّنِي :

( 109 :



ras
（（ ）ما حُكْمٌ تَوْكِيدِ الفِعْلِ المُضَارِعِ بِالُّونِ في هَنَا البَبْتِ ؟ ولِمَهْ ؟ （ر）（Y）

والمَصَدَرَ．
（ ）


．أَعْرِبْ مَا طُبُعَ بِالأَحْمَرْ
س V：مَا إِعْرَابُ أسم الإشارَةِ في كُرِّ جُمْنَةٍ مِمَّا يَأَتْي؟


．
（（ ）ماذا في حَقِيبَتِكَ هَذْهِ
س＾：أَعْرِبْ 》خَوْفاً《 في كلِّ جُمْلَةٍ مِمَّا يَأَتِي ：
．
（Y）بَقِيتُ في البَيْتِ خَوْفاً مِنَ الحَرِّا
（Y）خِفْتُ خَوْفَاً شَدِيداً اً
（乏）أَدْخَلَ الحادِثُ في قَلْبْهِ خَوْفاً شدِيداً ．

(1) كَمْ رِيَالاً عِنْدَكَك ؟
(Y) كَمْ سُورَةً حَفِظْتَ


(0) بِكَمْ هَذَا ؟









. لي شَيْلَ


. ذُبِحَتْ ثَلَاتُ دَجَاجَاتٍ (V)


．
．



（1）（1）لَام الاْبْتِدَاءِ．

（1）المَعْعُول لأَجْ⿻三丨له．
．（r．）الحَال（Y）
．تَمْيِيز النِّسْبَة（YY）
．
（1）حَرْف أَمْنَّاعِ لِاْمِتَّا
．（\％）الاغْتِصَاص
－（0）التَّنْ
．（V）
（9）إنَا الفُجَائِيّة．
（1）مِنْ الرَّإِئَةَة
．

．نَنْي المَاضِي بِدِلا（IV）
．
．تَمْيِيز الذَّات（Y）（Y）


مُنَادًى اَكْتْسَبَ التَّرْرِيفَ بِالْنّةَاءِ．
نَائِب الفَاعِلِ（Y人）

شَ（ H （ H ）



س س ا: هَاتِ مِثَالاً لِكُلِّ ما يَأَنْيَ : (1) فِعْل ثُثَاكِيّ مُحْرَّدَّ مِنْ بَابِ: (أ) فَعِلَ يَفْعَلُ .
(ب) فَعُلَ يَفْعُلُ .
(ج-) فَعِلَ يَفْعِلُ .
:
(أ) بِحَرْفِ


. فِّل رُبَاعِيّ مُحْرَّرَّ
( )
(أ) بِحَرْوِ
(ب) بحَرْفَنْيْنِ





( ( ) وَرَرَنَّ الجَرَّسْ


( (1) (






(へ) إنَّ اللّهَ يَقَبَلُ تَوْبَةَ العَبْدِ مَا لَمْ يُغْرَغْرْ.
( 1 (
(1 (1) لِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ إِذَا ما تَمَّ نُقْصْانُ


(97: ( 1 ( 10 (
( ( )

(ov:الأَنَيَّاء) (T)

س . . . .


س ب Y : أَعْرِبِ البَيْتَ الآَتِيَ إعْرابا كامِلاً:
حَتَّى مَتَى أَنْتَ في لَهْوٍ وفي لَحِبٍ والَّ س س ب : أَعْرِبْ مَا طُعَ بِالأَحْمَرِ فِيمَا ِيَأْتِي :
(1) (1)

( ( )




( ) (
؟ (Y)
. أَعْرِبْ ما طُعَعَ بالأَحْمَ
س ب : أَعْرِبِ الآيةَ الكُرِيمَةَ الاَتِيَّهَ:
(v:الَّلَّلَّلَّ
س بT: اجْعَلْ كلَّ جُهْلَةٍ مِمَّا يَأْتِي حَالاً:
(1) الشَّمْسُ تَغْرُبُ

- غَرَبَتِ الشَّمْسْنُ (Y) (Y)


س س


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (101) ( } 10 \text { ( ( ) ( } 1 \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

() (1):

 (1) أَخْرَجْني المَرَرِّس أَمْسِّ

(Y) دَ
( )
 والانْفِصْمَالُ ؟ وَلِمَهْ ؟

؟


 (TM: (Y)

س

(Y7: (Y) (Y) (Y) (Y) (Y)
( OV:الأَنَيَّاء) (Y)
( ) ادْخُلُنَّ الفَصْلَ يا إِخْوَانُ .
س س (1) إلى المُد ير أَشْكُوكَ غداً .
. (Y)

. أُحِبُّ اللُّغَةَ العرَرَبيَّةَ




إنْ تُسَافِرْ إلَى مَكَّةَ أَسافِفْرْ هَعَكَ

تَدَّتْتْ بعون الله.

محتويات الدروس


| IVr |  | （ $\mathrm{Y} \cdot \mathrm{C}$ |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| IVA | 》 حذف الواو قبل المحذر منه إذا كان مصدرا مؤولا؛ الأحرف المشبهة بالفعل؛ البدل وأنواعه | （Y） |
| 1111 |  | （YY） |
| 190 |  | （ $\mathrm{Yr}^{\text {）}}$ |
| $r . \varepsilon$ | بابا 》اففَعَلَّ | （ $\upharpoonright$ ¢） |
| Fll |  <br>  نواصب الفعل المضارع ع | （ Y 0 ） |
| rr． | الفعل الرباعي؛ ضمير الفصل؛ 》هِنْ《 التبعيضية؛ تقدم همزة الاستغهام على حروف العطف؛ من أوزان <br>  المضعف؛ 》اهما《 المصدرية الظرفية | （Y7） |
| rr． | أقسام الضمائر؛ ضمائر النصب المنفصلة، ومواضع الإتيان بها؛ من أوزان مصدر الفعل الشُّلاثي المجرد： <br>  | （ Y ） |
| rrı | المفعول المطلق؛ أقسام المصدر：مصدر المرة، مصدر الهيئة، المصدر الميمي | （ Y ） |
| Y $¢ 7$ | المفعول له؛ 》لاه＜العاطفة؛ حرف التحضيض والتنديم | （rq） |
| ro． |  | $\left(r^{\circ} \cdot\right)$ |
| YOO | （الحال؛ | （ ${ }_{\text {r }}$ ） |
| Y71 | （》 | （rY） |
| rvi |  | （ $\mu^{\mu}$ ） |
| rVv | الممنوع من الصرف | $(\Gamma \varepsilon)$ |
| 「へ〕 | الملحق الأول：أبنية مصادر الفعل الثلاثي المجرد | ＊ |
| r 19 | الملحق الثاني：أوزان جانحع التكسير | 粎 |
| rar | تمارين عامة | 嗦档 |

## KEY

Durūs al-lughah al-'Arabiyyah li-ghayr al-nāțiqīn bihā Book 3 Part 2


By:
Dr. V. Abdur Rahim




# Explanation of certain Grammatical Terms \& Symbols 

1. Fathah is the vowel sign (一) denoting "a".
2. Kasrah is the vowel sign ( $\boldsymbol{\sim}$ ) denoting " i ".
3. Dammah is the vowel sign ( ) denoting "u".
4. Sukūn is the sign ( ${ }^{\bullet}$ ) denoting absence of a vowel.
5. Shaddah is the $\operatorname{sign}(\underset{)}{\omega}$ ) denoting doubling of the letter. " $\bar{a}$ " is long "a" as in father. " $\bar{i}$ " is long " i " as in machine. " $\overline{\mathrm{u}}$ " is long "u" as in rule.

## LESSON 16

## In this lesson we learn the following:

(1) We have seen in Book Two (Lessons 4 and 10) that most Arabic verbs are made up of three letters which are called radicals, e.g.:


6 كتُبَ 6

There are, however, certain verbs which consist of four radicals, e.g.:
'he translated'
'he said bismillāḥirraḥmānirraḥīm'

A verb consisting of four radicals is called a rubā‘ verb (الْفِعْلُ الرُّباعِئُ).

a) mujarrad verb has only three letters if it is thulāth $\bar{i}$, and only four letters if it is rub $\bar{a} \backslash \bar{l}$, and no extra letters have been added to them in order to modify the meaning. e.g.:
(salima) (1) 'he was safe'
(zalzala) 'he shook (it) violently'.
b) In a mazi$d$ verb one or more letters have been added to the radicals in order to modify the meaning, e.g.: a thulāthī verb: from

مَسَكَّ
-
تَسَنَأَّمَ tasallama 'he received'. Here a $t \bar{a}$ ' has been added before the first radical, and the second radical has been doubled.

- 1

[^0]
# LESSON 16 

istaslama 'he surrendered'. Here three letters (hamzah, sīn and $t \bar{a}$ ') have been added before the first radical.
a rubāt verb: from ${ }_{j}^{j} j$ (zalzala):
. Each of these modified forms is called a $b a \bar{b} b$ (البّا $)$.

## Abwāb of the mujarrad verb:

There are six groups of the mujarrad verb of which we have learnt four in Book Two (Lesson 10). Each of these groups is also called a $b \bar{a} b$ in Arabic, and its plural is $a b w a \bar{a} b$ (الأبوابٌ).

Here are the six groups:

2) a-i group: (jalasa ya-jlisu).


5) u-u group: (qaruba ya-qrubu) 'to approach, come near'.
6) i-i group: ${ }^{*}$ وَرِشَ :َرِّ
(2) We have just been introduced to some of the $a b w a \bar{b} b$ of the mazīd verb. We will now learn one of these $a b w \bar{a} b$ in some detail. The $b \bar{a} b$ we are going to learn is bāb fa" "ala (Jَّ ${ }^{\text {ád }}$ ). In this $b \bar{a} b$ the second radical is doubled, e.g.:

| 90 | (qabbala) | 'he kissed', | زَرّسَ | (darrasa) | ' he taught', |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $J^{\text {wiw }}$ | (sajjala) | 'he recorded', | ك\% | (kabbara) | 'he said Allāhu akbar', |
| عِلمَ | ('allama) | 'he taught', | رَّتَبَ | (rattaba) | 'he arranged'. |

## The mudārri':

Let us now learn the muḍäri ' of this bāb. (4)

[^1]
## LESSON 16

As a rule the حَرْفُ المُصْارَعَهِ takes fathah if the verb is composed of four letters.
As the verb in this bāb is made up of four letters, the حَرْفُ المُضضارَعَةِ takes dammah ${ }^{(5)}$. The first letter takes fathah, the second takes sukūn, the third takes kasrah and the fourth takes the case-ending, e.g.:


## The amr:

The amr is formed by dropping the حَرْفُ المُّضارَعَةِ and the case-ending, e.g.:
(tu-qabbil-u : qabbil) 'kiss!'
(tu-darris-u : darris) 'teach!'.

## The masdar:

We have been introduced to the mașdar in Book Two (Lesson 11). The thulāthī mujarrad verbs do not have any particular pattern for the maşdar. It comes on different patterns, e.g.:


'he entered' : دَخَلَ 'entry’
شَشِبَ 'he drank' : شُرْبٌ 'drinking’
But in mazīd verbs each bāb has its own pattern for mașdar. The maşdar-pattern of bāb fa "ala

$\int_{0}^{0}$ :
(taqbīl-un) 'kissing'
(tasjī1-un) 'recording'
(tadrīs-un) 'teaching'.
The mașdar of a näqiṣ verb, and of a verb wherein the third radical is hamzah, is on the pattern of

(tasmiyat-un) 'naming' (tarbiyat-un) 'education'

[^2]

We have learnt the formation of ism al-fā'il from the thulāthi mujarrad in Lesson 4 of this Book.
 with mu-. As the ism al-fá'il is a noun it takes tanwin, e.g.:
(yu-sajjil-u : mu-sajjil-un) 'a tape recorder'
: يُرَرِّسٌ

In all the $a b w a \bar{b} b$ of the mazīl the ism al-maf' $\bar{l} l$ is just like the ism al-fá 'il except that the second radical takes fathah instead of kasrah, e.g.:

يُجَلِّلِّ 'he binds (a book)':
" ${ }^{2}$ (mujallid-un) 'book-binder'

'he praises much':

víno (muhammad-un) 'one who has been praised much'

In all the $a b w \bar{a} b$ of the mazid, noun of place and time is same as ism al-maf"iul, e.g.:

(3) We have already learnt certain patterns of the broken plural. Here we learn two more:


(4) Here we learn two more patterns of the maṣctar from the thulãthī mujarrad.



| فَوْز اً | to be successful, triumph, achieve, accomplish (a-u) | ِحنَّنَّ تَهْْنِئَةً | to congratulate (ii) |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
|  | explanation | نُّحْةٌ (ج نُسَخْ | copy |
|  | contest |  | student (seeker of knowledge) |
| كِى يَجْزِ | to reward, recompense (a-i) |  | to be large, bulky, voluminous (u-u) |
|  | author | خِّمٌ ( | voluminous |
| توزِيعا | to distribute (ii) | فَإِلَدِّهٌ (ج فَوَائِلٌ ) | benefit, utility, advantage, profit, use |
|  | to be numerous, manifold (v) |  | be perfect, mplete (a-i) |
| $\tau$ | to explain (a-a) | (الوَافِي) | all, complete, ample, bundant |
|  | matters | لون تِلوِينا | to colour (ii) |
| وِ يَحْوِي | to contain (a-i) | ¢ | to make clear (ii) |
| صُورَةٌ (ج صٌوَهٌ) | picture | حلِّلَّ تَجْلِّ | to bind (a book) (ii) |
| خِّ | to serve (a-u/a-1) |  | bound, volume |
|  | to write (a book) (ii) | وَكِّ عَوْدِيعاً، وَدَاعاً | to bid farewell, say goodbye (ii) |
|  | group | 10ِ | to receive (a guest) ( x ) |
|  | learned man, scholar | تَشْغيا | to start (a machine) <br> (ii) |
| ثِثرَ | to be many, numerous (u-u) |  | air conditioner |
| حِّى يُحِيِّيِّ تَحِّة" | to greet (ii) | حِّيَّمُ الشَّبَابِ | youth camp |
| حهَ تَخْيِيما | camp (in tents) (ii) | كَ تَوْقِّ | to stop (ii) |
| تَقْبيا | to kiss (ii) |  | to prevent, hold back (a-a) |
|  | to intensify, become severe (viii) | مَانِعٌ | objection, anything to prevent |







(ii)
to smoke (a cigarette) (ii)
to suspend, hang (ii)
to whip, flog (a-i)
to colour (ii)
to welcome (to say marhaban) (ii)
to pave the way, prepare (ii)
to name (ii)
to speak to, to tell


10 0, 0

name of the hadith collection by Imām Mālik (lit. a paved way, an easy access to the study of hadith)

商 appointed time
 sine die (from the Latin "without day"). e.g. to adjourn indefinitely - without setting any future date of meeting
 to understand, to be reasonable, realize (a-i)
to reach, amount to (to come to knowledge) (a-u) to specify, earmark, appoint, single out (ii)
to deviate from the right course, act sinfully and immorally (a-u)

$\because$


وَوَّى تَقْوِيةً to strengthen, fortify, invigorate (ii)
 indulgence in sensual pleasures)


حَ وَ "of so to fill (aba) e.g. tonic
invigorating medicine,
to measure, to draw analogy (a-i)

## LESSON 17

## In this lesson we learn the following:

(1)

This is another $b \bar{a} b$ from the $a b w a \bar{b}$ of mazīd.
In this a hamzah is prefixed to the first radical which loses its vowel, e.g.:
نَزَلْ (nazala) 'he came down':
(kharaja) 'he went out' : خَرَجَ أَخْ (akhraja) 'he brought out'

## The muḍāri':

The mựäri' should have been يُانَزْ
So it becomes ${ }^{\text {V }}{ }^{\text {n }}$ (yunzil-u $)^{(1)}$.



## The amr:

Note that the $a m r$ is formed from the original form of the mudāri ${ }^{\prime}$, and not from the existing form.
 (anzil).

## The masdar:




? Mil from (islām-un) 'becoming a Muslim'.

The ism al-fā ${ }^{‘} i l:$
As we have seen in $b \bar{a} b f a$ "ala, the حَرْفْ المُضضارَعَة is replaced with mu-, e.g.:
?يُنْ

[^3]
## LESSON 17

nيُنْكُ (yumkin-u) 'it is possible' : :

## The ism al-maf'ül:

It is just like the ism al-fá 'il except that the second radical has fathah, e.g.:
"يُرِّلُ




The noun of place and time (إِسْما المَكانِ والزَّهانِانِ):
It is the same as the ism al-maf' $\bar{u}$ l, e.g.:
(atḥafa:yuthif-u)'to present s.o. with a curio'


Here are some non-salim verbs transferred to this $b \bar{a} b$ :

|  | الماضِي | عالمُضار ع |  | ارِّهُمٌ الفَاعِلِ |  |
| :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: | :---: |
| $\begin{aligned} & \text { he made } \\ & \text { (him) stand } \end{aligned}$ | أَقَاكِّ | 'يُقِيمُ | إِمآهُّ | رُقُقِيمٌ | وْمُقَمٌ |
| he believed |  | "ِئْرِنُ | for إْمُمانٌ | مُؤْمِنٌ | هُؤُّنْ |
| he made (it) obligatory | أَوْجَبَ | يُوجِبُ | إِّ إْجَبٌ | مُوجِبٌ | مُوجَبٌ |
| he completed | \% أَتَّ |  | إِمْكَامٌ | هُمِّمٌ | \% |
| he put down | أَلْقَى | يُلْقِي | 鱽 for إلْقايٌ | مُلْقْ (المُلْقْي) | (1 مُلْقُى |

(2) The verb

It takes two objects, e.g.:

| 'أَعْكَتُ لا لا ساعةً | 'I gave Bilāl a watch.' |
| :---: | :---: |

In the Qur'an:

The objects may be pronouns, e.g.:

'Who gave it to you?'

(3) ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{g}$ g means 'even if', e.g.:

 to me free.'
Note that the verb after ${ }^{\circ} j$ is $m \bar{a} d \overline{1}$.
(4) (4) لألِّالٍ is a lām with a fathah prefixed to the mubtada' for the sake of emphasis, e.g.:

'And indeed the remembrance of Allāh is the greatest.' (Qur'ān, 29:45).

'And indeed a believing slave girl is better than a mushrikah even though she might be pleasing to you.' (Qur'ān, 2:221).
This lãm is not to be confused with the preposition $ل$ which has a kasrah, but takes a fathah when prefixed to a pronoun, e.g.: لاُ لُ الإبتِداءِ does not change the ending of the mubtada'.


## LESSON 17


'Ḥāmid fell ill in the morning.'


'I became active in the morning.'
Here the pronoun $\stackrel{\&}{ت}$ is the $i s m$.
It is also used in the sense of just 'he became' without reference to the timing, e.g.:

'He united your hearts, and you became brothers by His grace.' (Qur'ān. 3:103).


'The students are about to return to their countries in the holidays.'
Here الطلوبُ is its ism and maṣdar mu'awwal, (2) (أَنْ يَرجعوا) is the khabar.
Its khabar is always a maṣdar mu'awwal, i.e., أنْ + the muḍāri .
Here is another example:

- 'I am about to get married.'

Here its ism is the damïr mustatir (hidden pronoun) in the verb أَنا in شِشكُ
 some reason'. Here are some more examples:
. 'Give me some book.'
. رَأيتُهُ في مَانكانٍ ما 'I have seen him somewhere.'
'You will understand this some day.'

(8) The alif of ابْن is omitted in writing also if it is between the names of the son and the father, e.g.: '

[^4]This omission is subject to the following two conditions:
a) the father's name should not be preceded by any title. If it is preceded by a title, the calif should be retained, e.g.:


- الحَسَنُ ُبْنْ الإمامِ عليٍّ 'Ḥasan son of Imām 'Alī.'
b) all the three words should be in the same line, e.g.:

خاللُ بْنُ الوَلِيدِ .ابْنٌ الوَلِيلِ
Note that the word preceding loses its fanwin, e.g.:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Bitāl-u bn-u Hāmid-in), not } \\
& \text { (Bilāl-un bn-u Ḥämid-in). }
\end{aligned}
$$

## Vocabulary



$(\underbrace{v} \dot{g} g^{2} \dot{b}^{2}) \underbrace{2} \dot{f}^{\circ} \dot{b}$ ger sender of a letter（active participle）
园
 $\left.\left.(40)^{2}()^{2}\right)^{2} c \mid 5\right)$

Ti ت



vise
$51,\left.015\right|_{s} ^{0}$


| 酸 $\begin{array}{l}\text { to join the hearts in } \\ \text { love，to unite（ii）}\end{array}$ |
| :--- | love，to unite（ii）

 doing s．t．）（sis kāna）（iv）
尾 to prepare，fix up st．（iv）
 to make s．t．obscure and undetermined（iv）

 to use（ x ）

## LESSON 18

## In this lesson we learn the following:

(1) Verbs are either transitive or intransitive. A transitive verb (الفِعْلُ المُتَعَحِّيِّ) needs a subject which does the action, and an object which is affected by the action, e.g.:
-قتنلَ الكُنْاِِيُّ الجاسُوسَ 'The soldier killed the spy.'
Here the soldier did the killing, so the word ${ }_{4}^{2}$ is is the $f \bar{a} ' i l$ (the subject), and the one affected by the killing is the spy. So the word الجاسُوسא is the maf'ul bihi (the object). Here is another example:

An intransitive verb (المِعْلُ الل) confined to the subject, and does not affect others, e.g.:

- فَرِحَ المارِّس $\quad$ 'The teacher was happy.'

The subject of certain verbs affect others but not directly. They do this with the help of prepositions, e.g.:
'I looked at him.', 'We believe in God.'. This happens in Arabic also, e.g.:
.

- 'We looked at the mountain.'
- فََمَنْ رَغِبَ عَنْ سُنَّنَي فَلَيْسَ هِنِّيِ
. 'I want to look into the syllabus of your school.'

The object of such a verb is called اللمَفْعْوُلُ غَيْرُ الصَّريحح (inexplicit object). It is majrür because


[^5]（2）How to make an intransitive verb transitive？
We say in English＇Rise and raise your hand＇．Rise is intransitive，and by changing the pattern of the verb we get raise which is transitive．But this kind of change is very rare in English．In Arabic it is very common．
An intransitive verb can be made transitive by changing it to：
a）bāb fa＂＂ala（丁䉞），e．g．：
－نَزَلَ（nazala）＇he got down ：نَزَّلَ（nazzala）＇he brought down＇

＇I got down from the car，then I took down the child．＇
This process of changing an intransitive verb into a transitive verb by doubling the second radical

b）bāb af ala（（うْنَفْن），e．g．：
（jalasa）＇he sat＇：أَجْلَسََ ：

＇I sat in the first row and I seated the child by my side．＇
 hamzah）．

Most verb can be changed to either of these．One must learn this from books and dictionaries．
If a transitive verb is transferred to any of these two $a b w a \bar{b}$ it becomes doubly transitive and takes two objects，e．g．：
．I studied Arabic．＇




＇Bilāl understood the lesson．＇

（Literally＇Bilāl made Ibrāhīm understand the lesson．＇）

## LESSON 18

 hamzah has been omitted. The mudāri ' is يُرِير (yuri) and the amr is
This is how the amt is isnāded to the other pronouns of the second person:

(4) We have just seen that when a verb is transferred to bāb fa" "ala it becomes transitive, e.g.: نَزَّلَ from زَزَلْ . If the verb is already transitive with one object it becomes doubly transitive with two objects, egg.: دَرَّسَ from دَرَسَ.
This $b \bar{a} b$ also signifies an extensive or intensive action. In Arabic the first is called ${ }^{\prime}$ الُّكُ

a) an extensive action is one done on a large scale, or done repeatedly, e.g.:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. 'I went round this country' but }
\end{aligned}
$$

فَتَحْتٌ البابَ
'I opened the door.' but
-فَتَّحْتُ أَبْوابَ الفُصُولِ
عَلَّ الرَّجُلو مالَّهُ .
عَلَّدَ الرُجُلو مالَهُ . 'The man repeatedly counted his money.'
b) An intensive action is one done thoroughly and with great force, e.g.:

كسَسَتُ الکوْبُ 'I broke the glass.' but

قَطَعْتُ الحَبْلَ $\quad$ 'I cut the rope.'

- 'I cut the rope to pieces.'

Note that the extensive action affects a number of objects, or one object a number of times, whereas an intensive action affects only one object only once but with great force.

Note that the noun after the waww is mansiub.
 feminine plural
Here is a hadith:

'Beware of jealousy, for jealousy eats up good deeds just as fire eats up firewood.'
(6) إِّنَّا
 rendering the following noun manșüb.
We say إلأَعْمالُ is marfū " and not manșūb.
Unlike ${ }_{s}^{\text {إنَّ }}$ إنَّما إِّ the word in in a verbal sentence as well, e.g.:
إنَّما يَكْنِبُ
In the Qur'ān (9:18):

'Only those tend the mosques of Allāh who believe in Allāh and the Last Day.'
(7) للUl'g' 'By Allāh' is an oath ${ }^{(2)}$. In Arabic it is called ? and the statement that follows the qasam

If the jawāh al-qasam commences with a māçç and is affirmative, it should take the emphatic ${ }^{\circ} \hat{\mathrm{J}}$, e.g.:

- وَاللّهِ لَقَاْ فَرِحْتُ كَثِ 'By Allāh, I was greatly delighted.'

If however, the verb is mādī but negative, it does not take the emphatic particle, e.g.:

[^6]
## LESSON 18

وَاللهِ ما رَأَيْتُهُ . 'By Allāh, I did not see him.' ${ }^{\text {(3) }}$
(8) The verb كَانَ Sc it means 'he became in the evening', e.g.: 'The weather became fine in the evening.'

Here الكَوُّ is ism and لَطيفاً is its khabar. See أَصْبَاً in Lesson 17.
(9) إنَّ بِّبي صُداعاًاً شَديلً 'I am suffering from severe headache.' ماذا بِكِ يا زيْنَبُ ؟ 'What are you suffering from, Zainab?'
Note that many words denoting disease are on the pattern of ${ }^{20} \mathrm{~L}^{2} \dot{\text { eg }}$ (fu‘ālun), e.g.:

'vertigo' ${ }^{2}$ <super>ُوعَ الٌ 'cough'.
(10) One of the patterns of the maṣdar is ${ }^{20}$ لَفَفَ (fa‘ālun), e.g.:
ذَهَبَ going ’ from' ذَهابٌٌ


This is called جَمَمْعُ الجَمْعْعْعْعُ الجَمْعْ (the plural of the plural). Some nouns have. eng.
أَمَاكِنٌ
أَساوِرٌ
أَيادٍ 'hand'
The ${ }^{\text {جَمْعْعُ الجَمْعْ mostly has the meaning of the plural. But in some cases it has a different meaning, }}$ e.g.:

أَيلٍ means 'hands' أَيادٍ means 'favours'


[^7](12)

'How did you come to know that he is telling a lie?'
In the Qur'ān:

'We have indeed revealed it on the Night of Decree. And what will inform you what the Night of Decree is. The night of Decree is better than a thousand months.'
This expression has been used in the Qur'an about thirteen times.
(13) The meaning of the poetic line:

'I have not seen anything like a good deed: its taste is sweet, and its face is beautiful.' (4)

This line is used in some editions instead of the following line:

'The fact that the word shams is feminine is no discredit to the sun, nor is the masculine gender of hilal a matter of pride for the moon.'

## Vocabulary

|  | to spend the evening, to <br> enter into the evening <br> (complete verb) |
| :--- | :--- |
| to become in the |  |
| evening (sis kāna) |  |$\quad$ to rise (of sun) (a-u)

The word $\square$ should have the tanwin, but it has been omitted for metrical reasons.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { عَادَ يَعُوذُ عَوْداً، عَوْدَةً عِيَادَةً } \\
& \text { (1) to return } \\
& \text { (2) to visit a sick person } \\
& \text { (a-u) }
\end{aligned}
$$

~سَ venomous, poisonous
to desire, covet, crave

 2 صِرِّ pure, unadulterated أَيَّ (ii) , عَغْ

発 " to inform, give an insight (iv) to be or become tired (ia)




to move s.t. from its place, transport, transfer, remove (a-u)
 to welcome (ii) ambulance
 to become clear (a-i) to escape, be saved (a-u) to save (ii)
(1) to be turned upside down (2) to return (vii)
 to become. clear (viii)

(gr) to transfer an intransitive verb into a transitive verb (ii)
to bring down, send down (ii)

"́lér Sue
$\mathrm{CH}^{2}$
hunger
(1) to redouble
(2) (gr) to change a verb into form ii (ii)

to
cry (iv)
to marry (a girl) (a-a)
to give (a girl) in marriage (iv)
to wrong, do wrong, oppress, treat unjustly (a-i)
to shorten (ii)
to ask for a girl's hand in marriage (a-u)

to put s.o. to sleep, to induce sleep (ii)





make so.


LESSON 18


${ }^{\text {s }}$ Cis to destroy, ruin (iv)

destroyer (active participle)
$\underbrace{2}$ خَطَ firewood

 religious practices and beliefs not based on the teaching of Qur'an and the sunnah but invented after the time of the Prophet (saw) being unveiled, not covering the face (woman)
) way, road


to specify, earmark, appoint, single out (ii)
 to go, move, travel (a-i) to clean (ii)
innovation in religious matters
 to go astray, loose ones way, to err (a-i)
to prevent, to hold back, refrain (a-u) the particle ma in innama (meaning only) so called because it prevents inna from rendering the following noun mansī̄b.
 ruling

(1) to enjoin, make s.t. obligatory (2) gr. affirmation (iv)

(gr) to be the first word in a sentence (v)
(gr) to emphasize the verb with the heavy nun. (ii)
 أَعْرَبِ أْرَابًا
(2) to analyze a sentence (iv)

to overtake, to catch up (iv)


(1) to indicate the system of case ending

## LESSON 19

## In this lesson we learn the following:


قَابَبَ (qābala) 'he met’ شَ (shăhada) 'he watched'
(sā‘ada) 'he helped’ لَسَاعَأَ (hāwala) 'he tried'
(rāsala) 'he corresponded' لآَّلَّى (lāqā) 'he met'.



The amr: After omitting the حَرْفُ الُْصْارَعَهِ and the case-ending from:
تُقابِلٌ we get: قابِلْ (tu-qābil-u: qābil).
The yä' is omitted from näqis verb. So the amr of
لاقِ is تُاْلَقِي
The maṣdar: This bāb has two maṣdars:
a) one is on the pattern of "ááćcés (mufă‘alat-un), e.g.:
: قَابَابَلَ
In näqiṣ verbs -aya- is changed to -ā-, e.g.:


b) the other is on the pattern of ${ }^{\circ 9} \mathrm{~J} \log$ (fía al-un), e.g.:

In nāqiṣ verbs the yä' is changed to hamzah, e.g.:

The ism al-fā‘il:


The ism al-maf' $\bar{u} l$ : This is just like the ism al-fā'il except that the second radical has fathah, e.g.:

## LESSON 19

مُرَاقِقٌ : يُرَ|قِبٌ $\quad$ (murāqib-un) 'one who observes'
(murāqab-un) 'one who is observed'
(mukhāțib-un) 'one who addresses'
? ${ }^{2}$ (mukhāṭab-un) 'one who is addressed'
(mubārik-un) 'he blesses'
饮 (mubārak-un) 'blessed'
(munādi-n) 'one who calls'
(munāda-n) 'one who is called'
The noun of place and time: It is the same as the ism al-maf $\bar{u} l$, e.g.:

(2) We have seen lām al-ibtid $\bar{a}$ ' in Lesson 17, e.g.:

 particles of emphasis cannot come together in one place. So the sentence becomes:
'Surely your house is indeed more beautiful.'.
After its removal from its original position the lām is no longer called lām al-ibtidā '. It is now called

A sentence with both $ا ٕ \underset{\sim}{\text { إ }}$ and the $l \bar{a} m$ is more emphatic than one with $\quad$ إنَّ or the $l a \bar{m}$ only.
Here are some more examples:

'Indeed the frailest of houses is the spider's house.' (Qur' $\mathrm{a} n, ~ 29: 41$ ).

'Indeed your God is One.' (Qur'ān, 37:4).

'Indeed the first sanctuary appointed for mankind is the one which is in Bakkah (Makkah).' (Qur'ān, 3:96).

'Indeed the harshest of all voice is the voice of the ass.' (Qur'ān, 31:19).

a) With mādī̀ denotes certainty ( ${ }^{\circ}$ ) النَّ $ا$ ), e.g.:

. قلْ فَاتَتْاكَ دُرُوْوٌ 'You did miss many lessons.'
b) With the mudāri ' it denotes one of the following things:

. 'The headmaster may return tomorrow.'
-قَلْ يَنْزِلْ المَطُرُ اليَوْمَ
2) rarity or paucity ( ${ }^{2}$ ) ${ }^{\circ}$
.قَلْ يَنْحَحُ الطالبُ الكَنْلونُ 'A lazy student sometimes passes the examination.'

3) certainty ( ${ }^{2}$ ) التَّ 1 ), e.g.:

مُوَّ
'While you know for sure that I am the messenger of Allāh to you.' (Qur'ān, 61:5)
(4) The plural of ${ }^{2}$ ذُ is ${ }^{2}$. It is declined like the sound masculine plural, i.e., its raf $f^{\prime}$-ending is wāw, and naṣb/jarr -ending is $y \bar{a}$, e.g.:
raf': . 'Relatives deserve your help more.'
Here $و \not g g^{g} \dot{ذ}$ is marfūu as it is mubtada', and its raf"-ending is wāw (dhawū).
naṣb: • 'Help people of knowledge.'

jarr: . سَألتُ عنْ ذَوِي الحاجاتِ 'I asked about needy people.'
Here ذَوْ $\dot{\text { ذ }}$ is majrūr because it is preceded by a preposition, and the jarr-ending is $y \bar{a}$, (dhawī).

## LESSON 19



Its $n \bar{u} n$ has shaddah, but it is also used without the shaddah, i.e., $¿ J$ (läkin), and in this case it loses two of its characteristics:
a) It does not render the noun following it manșūb, e.g.:

'The teacher came but the students did not come.'

In the Qur'ān (19:38):

'But the wrong-doers are today in manifest error.'
Note الظَّالِّمُونَّ الَّلِمينَ not.
b) It may also be used in a verbal sentence, e.g.:

'Ali was absent, but Ahmad attended.'
In the Qur'ān (2:12)

'But they do not perceive.'
 speaking to, e.g.:


In the Qur'ān:

'That is better for you.' (2:54).

'Are your unbelievers better than those?' (54:43).

- 包宁
'He said "Thus it will be"" (19:21).
\& \&r نَ
'It will be announced to them, this is Paradise you have been enabled to inherit for what you used to do.' (7:43).
(7) The muḍār ${ }^{\prime}$ ' is sometimes used for the amr as in the Qur'ān (61:11)
- هِ هِّ

Here $\dot{3}$ نُ

عِيادَةٌ: عادَ

 (muḍūy-un), but because of the final $y \bar{a}{ }^{\prime}$, the wāw has been changed to $y \bar{a}{ }^{\prime}$, and the dammah of the

 singular form has four letters. ${ }^{(2)}$
If the plural of a word with more than four letters is formed on this pattern, only four consonants are retained in the plural and the rest are dropped, e.g.:

ع بُرْنُ 'programme' has five consonants.
Its plural is بَرَامِعُ. Note that the letter $\dot{J}$ and alif have been dropped.

## 



## LESSON 19

Here are some more examples:

سَفَارِجُ :سَفَرْجَلوٌ 'quince'
عَنَادِلٌ :عَنْدَلِيتٌ 'nightingale'

عَنَاكِبُ :عَنْكَبُوتٌ 'spider'
'hospital’3

هَ هِلَيَّةٌ 'gift'
مَنِيَّةٌ" fate, death'


## Vocabulary



[^8]|  | place where one <br> migrates to <br> to start, begin, <br> commence (a-a) |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |
| to try (iii) |  |




## LESSON 20

## In this lesson we learn the following:




The mudāri‘: As the verb is made up of five letters, the حَرْفُ المُشْارَعَةِ takes fathah, e.g.:

 this combination is somewhat difficult to pronounce. That is why one of the tā's is omitted in literary writings. Here are two examples from the Qur'ān:

'The angels and the Spirit (Jibrīl) descend therein.' (97:4)


'Do not spy.' (49:12)

The $a m r$ : It is formed by omitting the حَرْفُ المُضْارَعَةِ and the case-ending, e.g.:


The näqiṣ verb drops the final alif( which is written yā'), e.g.:
范 (ta-taghaddā : taghadda) 'have lunch!'.
The maṣdar: The mașdar of this bāb is on the pattern of "وتُفَّفُّ (tafa" "ul-un), i.e.,

'he remembered' : تَذَكَرَّ 'remembering'
In näqiṣ verb, because of the final yä the dammah of the second radical changes to kasrah, e.g.:


The second radical has kasrah in the ism al-fä'il and fathah in the ism al-maf' $\bar{u} l$, e.g.:


Here is an example of the ism al-maf"il:
玍:
The noun of place and time: It is the same as the ism al-maf" $\bar{u} l$, e.g.:
"نَّ

 verb becomes the subject, e.g.:

- زَوَّجَنِي أَبِي زَيْنَبَ

Here 'my father' is the subject. There are two objects 'me' and 'Zainab'. Now if bāb tafa 'ala is used:

'I' becomes the subject and 'Zainab' becomes the object and 'my father' has no role at all. Here is another example:

| بنِ بالس | 'Bilāl taught me swimming.' |
| :---: | :---: |
| تَعَلَّمْتُتُ | 'I learnt swimming.' |

(2) When I heard the adhān I went to the mosque.'

Here ${ }_{\alpha}^{\sim}$ e.g.:


In the Qur'ān (6:77)

'When he saw the moon rising he said, "This is my lord".'
 yet ${ }^{\prime(1)}$ which is called ${ }^{2}$ ä

[^9]
## LESSON 20

(3) The word ${ }^{\text {( }}$ 'we' sometimes needs specification, e.g.:

نَحْنٌ الطّالوبَ 'we, the students'
نَخْنُ التُّجَّارَ 'we, the merchants
نَحنُ المُسِلِمِينَ 'we, the Muslims.

As you can see, this noun is manș̦ūb, because it is the maf'ül bihi of a supposed verb,
'I specify, I mean'. Here are some examples:



'We Indians speak a number of languages.'
'We Muslims do not eat pork.'


## Vocabulary





## LESSON 21

## In this lesson we learn the following:



 The mudāri': As the verb is made up of five letters, the حَرْفُ الُْضْارعَةِ takes fathah, e.g.: يَتَكانَاسَلُ يَتَتَّاءَبُ ك يَتْبَاكَى
As in $b \bar{a} b$ تَفَعَّلَ the حَرْفُ المُّضارَعَةِ ta may be omitted in literary writings. Here are some examples from the Qur'ān:

'We have made you into nations and tribes so that you may know one another.' (49:13).


'And do not insult one another by nicknames.' (49:11).

-
'And do not help one another in sin and transgression.' (5:2)



In the nāqiṣ verb the final alif (written $y \bar{a}$ ) is omitted, e.g.:
تَتْبَاكَى $\longrightarrow$ تَبَاكَ 'pretend to cry!' (tatabākā $\rightarrow$ tabāka).
The masdar: The maşdar of this $b \bar{a} b$ in on the pattern of ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}{ }^{\text {che }}$ (tafā‘ul-un), e.g.:


In the näqiṣ verb the dammah of the second radical changes to kasrah, e.g.:


The ism al-fā‘il and ism al-maf'ill: These are formed by replacing the حَرفْ الُْصضارَعَةِ with mu-. The second radical has kasrah in the ism al-fä'il and fathah in the ism al-maf"ill, e.g.:

يَتَنَّاوَلٌ 'one who takes'

The noun of place and time: It is exactly like the ism al-maf"ill eng.:


'Medicines should not be left within the reach of children's hands.'
This bāb denotes, among other things, the following:

سَأَلْ 'he asked'

- ${ }^{\text {. }}$ 'the people asked one another'
- 

b) pretended action $\qquad$
 'he pretended to be sick' تَناوَمَ 'he pretended to sleep' تَتَامَى 'he pretended to be blind'
 egg.:
'Would that the stars were near' (impossible)


In the first example النُّجُو عَ is the ism of قَريبةٌ is its khabar.
Here are some more examples:
. 'Would that youth returned.'.
Here the verbal sentence ${ }^{2}$ يُ in is the khabar.

'How I wish my mother did not bear me.'
لَيْتَ لي مالاً كثيراً فَأَتَصَلَّقَ .
'How I wish I had a lot of money so that I could give it in alms.' ${ }^{1}$
Here مالا is the ism and لل is the khabar.
Some times the vocative particle يَ is prefixed to $\begin{gathered}\text { يَ } \\ \text { ' er } \\ \text { eng.: }\end{gathered}$

'Would that I were dust.' (Qur'ān 78:40)
 the entire genus). In the above sentence $l \bar{a}$ negates anything which can be called a book. Its $i s m$ and khabar should both be indefinite. Its ism is mabnī and has -a ending. Here are some more examples:


'There is no god but Allāh.'

'There is no șalāt after the fair (șalāt) till the sun rises, and there is no șalāt after the 'assr (șalāt) till the sun sets.'.
(4) In the previous lesson we learnt the tahdhir, e.g.:
إِيّاكَ وهذا الرَّجُلَ 'Beware of this man.'

Now if the thing warned against is a maşdar mu'awwal(2) the waw is omitted, e.g.:

[^10]لاَ تأْكْلْ كَثِيراً فَتَنامَ $\quad$ 'Don't eat too much lest you go to sleep.'
لَيَتَني غَنِيٌّ فَأُسَاعِدَ الفُقَراءً 'How I wish I were rich so that I might help the poor.'
2 See Lesson 11 for the masdar mu'awwal (المصْدَرَ المُؤَوَّلُو).

إيّاكَ والنَّوَمَ فَي النصْلِ
Here the thing warned against is a noun, النَّوح and it is preceded by the wãw. But if a maṣdar mu'awwal is used the waw is dropped, e.g.:


إيَّاكُّ وْ والزُّنا . 'Beware of illegal sex.'


إِيّاكِ والنِّسْنيانَ

(Note that تَنْسَ tansay is feminine. The masculine form is تَنْسَ tana).
 the feminine forms is عُرْ ('urj-un). This rule applies to all nouns on the pattern of لُقْ defects and colours. Here is an example of a noun denoting colour: the feminine of حَمْرَاءُ is أَحْمَرُ and the plural of both is 180 "حمر.
Note: الُُُنودُ الحُوْرُ 'Red Indians.'
 has changed to kasrah because of the following $y \bar{a}{ }^{\prime}$.
6) The verbs with waw as the first radical have two mașdars: one with the waw and other without it. The second form takes a compensatory 0 :

وَوَ
等


## LESSON 21



(8) A preposition preceding a maşdar mu'awwal may be omitted, e.g.:
. أَعوذُ بِاللّهِ عِنَ الاكَذِبِ 'I seek refuge in Allāh from telling lies.'
The preposition $\boldsymbol{\text { ַِ }}$ may be omitted if it is followed by a mașdar mu'awwal, e.g.:


This omission is optional and we may also say:


Here is another example:


Using the masdar mu'awwal we say:

(9) We have learnt the badal (الْبَرَل) in Lesson 1, e.g.:


The badal is of four kinds:

. نَجَحَحَ أَخُوكَ دحَمَّدٌ 'Your brother Muhammad has passed.'
Here مححمَّ 1 is the same as أَخُوكُ
2) partial badal (لِّبّ), e.g.:
-I أَكَلْتُ اللَّجَاجةَ نِصْفَفَها 'I ate the chicken, half of it.'
Here

3) comprehensive baal (بَألْ الاِشْتْمَالِ) e.g.:
'I like this book, its style.'
 in it.
Here is another example:

'We are asking each other about the examination, how it will be?'

'Give me the book - I mean - the notebook.'
Here, the intended word is اللَّفْتْرَ himself.


The badal need not agree with the mubdal minho in being definite or indefinite, e.g.:


The badal and the mubdal minho may:
a) both be nouns, e.g.:

'They ask you regarding the sacred month - regarding warfare in it.' (Qur'ān, 2:217)
b) both be verbs, e.g.

'And whoever does this shall receive punishment: the torment will be doubled for him.'
(Qur'ān, 25:68-69)
c) both be sentences, e.g.:

'And fear Him Who has provided you with (all good things) that you know: has provided you with cattle and sons.' (Qur'ān, 26:132-133)
d) be different, the first being a sentence and the second a noun, e.g.:

'Don't they look at the camels: how they have been created' (Gur' $\mathrm{a} n, ~ 88: 17$ ).
 the fao il .
You have already learnt one type of maşdar mu' wal which is made up of ${ }^{\circ}+\dot{\zeta}+$ mudārri', egg.:
 'I want to go out.'

## LESSON 21

There is another type of maṣdar mu'awwal which is made up of its ism and khabar, e.g.: . $\quad$ بَلَغَنِي انَنَّهُ ماتَ

Here the maṣdar mu'awwal أَنَّهُ
Here are some more examples:
. يَسُشٌّني انْنَّكَ تِلْمِينِّي 'I am pleased that you are my student.'
(literally: It pleases me that you are my student.)


## The Particles That Resemble The Verb

These are six: إنَّ sisters). We have already learnt them. They resemble the verb in two points:
a) in their meaning, for

إنَّ
كَأَنَّ
means 'I liken';
'كَ J means 'I correct';
'I wish';
'لَقَلِ means 'I hope' or 'I fear', and
b) in their grammatical function, for just as a verb renders its maf'ül bihi manșūb, in the same way these particles render their ism mansiūb.
The meanings of these particles:
إنَّ $ا$ أَنَّ

'Indeed Allāh is severe in punishment.' (Qur'ān, 5:2)

'And know that Allāh is indeed severe in punishment (Qur'ān, 8:25)
كَأَنَّ
كَأَنَّ العِلْمَ نورٌ 'It is as if knowledge is light.'

. كَأْنَّيَ أَعْرِفُكَ 'It looks as if I know you.'







These particles are used with the mubtada' and khahar, and they render the mubtada' mansụh. After their introduction the mubtada' is called 'ism inna', and the khabar is called 'khabar inna'.


Unlike the mubtada', the ism inna may be indefinite if the khabar inn is a verbal sentence, e.g.:
. كَانَنَّ شَيْئًاً لم يَحْلُثْ 'As if nothing has happened.'
Just like the khabar, the khabar inna may be mufrad, jumlah or shibhu jumlah, e.g.:

1) mufrad:

'Surely Allāh is swift in taking account.' (Qur'ān, 3:199).
2) sentence:
a) verbal sentence:

'Surely Allāh forgives all sins.' (Qur'ān, 39:53).
b) nominal sentence:

'Surely, Allāh with Him is the knowledge of the Hour.' (Qur'ān, 31:34).
3) shibhu jumlah:
a) prepositional phrase (الكجارُّ والمَجْرُورُ):


## LESSON 21

b) zarf:

- لَقَلَّ المدرِّسَ عِنْل الْمُلِّيرِ 'I hope the teacher is at the headmaster's.'

If the Khabar is shibhu jumlah, it may precede the ism, e.g.

'Surely to Us is their return, and Ours is their reckoning.' (Dur' $\mathrm{a} n, ~ 88: 25-26)$ The original sequence is:


Here the ism is definite (إِيابَهم، حِسابَهُم) so the change of order is optional. But if the ism is indefinite, it is compulsory, e.g.: ${ }^{(3)}$

'Surely with Us are fetters and a raging fire.' (Qur'ān, 73:12)

'Surely with hardship is ease.' (Qur'ān, 94:6).
Here it is incorrect to say:

If the ism of is the pronoun of the first person singular (ي) it is compulsory to use لَيْتَ in with it, ${ }^{(4)}$ e.g.:
. Would that I were a child.'
With إِنَّ أَنَّ كَ كَأَنَّ ، لَكِّ
So we may say إنَّنِّي إِنِي.
is not used with نَوْنُ الوِقايةِ
.' لَعَلِّي لَازَاكَاكَ مُدَّةً طِوِيلةً 'I am afraid I will not see you for a long time.'

[^11]
## Vocabulary

## V呺Lín just

 Lilisbl jLíbl的


u


C｜cicic｜

jos joe 1


فَسَقَ فُسُوقاً

＂Léت Er

to ask each
other（vi）
to be comforted，be reassured to spend（time），to judge， act as judge，decree（a－i）
to amuse oneself， kill time（a－u）
 to be able，can（x） introduced to express a wish which is either impossible or very difficult to achieve（sis kana）
there is no need to panic．（there is no reason／case for fear）
（self）confidence
to yawn（vi）
to rest（x）
to quarrel（vi）
to be permissible
（a－u）
to call each other names（vi）
to prohibit（a－a）
to deviate from the right course，act sinfully and immorally（au）
to seek
forgiveness（ x ）
to like，love，wish， want（ $a-a$ ）
to shake hands
to be or become
tired


هُتُشَنَائهِ


نَوَّمَ تَنْوِيماً

to name（ii）

to perceive，feel，realize （a－u）
to be on the point of doing s．t．（sis käna）


## LESSON 21



## ESSSON 22

## In this lesson we learn the following:



- سَقَطُ الْفِنجالْ وَانْكَسَرَ 'The teacup fell and broke.' (wa nkasara, not wa inkasara).

The mudāri': The حَرْفُ الْمُضارعَهِ takes fathah, e.g.:


The amr: After the omission of the حَرْفُ الْمُضارعَهِ the verb commences with a sākin letter, so it needs hamzat al-waṣl, e.g.:



The assimilated letters get separated in the maṣdar, e.g.:
'إِنْشِقاقٌ "splitting’ (inshaqqa : inshiqāq-un)
In the nāqiṣ verb the final $y \bar{a}{ }^{\prime}$ changes to hamzah, e.g.:


The ism al-fā il: it is formed by replacing the حَرْفُ الُّضْارَعَةِ with mu- as we have seen in other $a b w a ̄ b$.
The second radical takes kasrah in the ism al-fá 'il, and fathah in the ism al-maf'ül, e.g.:


The verbs of this $b \bar{a} b$ are mostly intransitive, so ism al-maf' $\bar{u} l$ is not formed.
The noun of place and time: It is the same as the ism al-maf'ull, e.g.:

The word مُنْحَنِّى (munhana-n) is also used in this sense.



Here are some more examples:




(2) If the interrogative hamzah (hamzah al-istifhām) is prefixed to this häh, the hamzat al-waṣl is omitted, e.g.:

'أَنْتَتَ البابٌ ؟ 'Did the door open?'
أْنْقَبَبَتِ السيّارةٌ ؟ 'Did the car overturn?'
(3) (3) 'The sun was eclipsed the day Ibrāhīm died.'. Here the sentence ماتَ إِبْراهِيمُ is mudāf ilayhi, and in the place of far, and يَوْمَ is mudâf.
Here are some more examples:


- سافَرْتُ يومَ ظَهَرَتِ النَّتائِجُ 'I left the day the results appeared.'
(4) ${ }^{\gamma} \mathrm{V}_{\mathrm{O}} \mathrm{f}$ means 'but for ...', e.g.:
- 'But for the sun the earth would have perished.'

[^12]
## LESSON 22

 happen because of the existence of another. In this example the perishing of the earth has not taken place because of the existence of the sun.
The noun that comes after

A lām is prefixed to an affirmative jawāb. A negative jawāb does not take this lām, e.g.:

'But for the examination I would not have attended today.'
Instead of the mubtada' we may also have a nominal sentence with أنَّ , e.g.:

'But for the fact that weather is hot, I would have attended the lecture.'

'But for the fact that I am sick, I would have gone with you.'

'But for the fact that you are in a hurry, I would have invited you to (my) house.'
(5) مَنْ إِبْراهيمُ هذا 'Who is this Ibrāhīm?'
. سيّّارةٌ الملديرِ هَنِهِ جَمِيلة ،This car of the headmaster is beautiful.'
 ilayhi it is a na't ${ }^{(2)}$. Here are some more examples:


2 النَّحْهُ = adjective.
ألقِهِ for ألْقِهُ 3
 e.g.:

أَبْنائي وبَناتِي يَلْرُسُونَ . 'My sons and daughters are studying.'
Here we have used the masculine يَرْزُسُونَ even though the pronoun refers to sons and daughters.
In the hadith:
إِنَّ الشمْسَ وَالقَمَرَ آيتانِ لَ يَنْكَفِانِ لِمَوْتِ أَحَحِ ولَالَالِحَاتِهِ .
'Indeed the sun and the moon are two signs. They are not eclipsed for the sake of someone's death or birth.'
Here يَنْكَسِفَانِ is the masculine form, and the pronouns in it refers to الشَمْسَ which is feminine and القَّمَرَ which is masculine.
Here is another example:


## Vocabulary




## LESSON 23

## In this lesson we learn the following:


الْتْظَرَ : نَظَرَ
Note that this is not $b \bar{a} b$ الْنْعَ $\mathcal{Y}$, because the $\dot{U}$ is the first radical in this verb, and the $\quad$ is extra.
(imtahana) 'he examined'
The extra $\because$ changes to $\supset$ or $b$ as explained below:
a) If the first radical is $\dot{j}$; 62 the extra $ت$ changes to $\nu$, e.g.:


(idhtakara $\rightarrow$ idhdakara $\rightarrow$ iddakara).


b) If the first radical is the extra $\underset{\text { c }}{\text { c }}$ changes to $\downarrow$. $\downarrow$, e.g.:


If the first radical is $g$ it gets assimilated to the extra $\bullet$, e.g.:

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (iwtaḥada } \rightarrow \text { ittaḥada). }
\end{aligned}
$$

## LESSON 23



The mudāri': The حَرْفُ المضارَعَةِ takes fathah, e.g.:


The $a m r$ : After the omission of the حَرْفُ المُضضارَعَةِ the verb commences with a sākin letter, so a hamzat al-waṣl is to be prefixed, e.g.:

إْنْظِظِرْ : تَنْتْظِرُ (tantazir-u : intazir)



The ism al-fā‘il and the ism al-maf‘ūl: These are formed by replacing the wَرْفُ المُضْارَعَهِ with mu-. The second radical takes kasrah in the ism al-fá 'il and fathah in the ism al-maf'ul, e.g.:
'he examines' 'يَمْتَحِنْ
"
In the muda "af and the ajwaf verbs both the ism al-fán'il and the ism al-maf'ull have the same form, e.g.:
'he derives' يَشْتْقَقُّ and for ${ }^{2}$ ²
In the same way:
'he selects' $\quad$, يَخْتارُ

$$
\text { and for }{ }^{2} \text { مُخْتِيَير ism al-maf'ūl. }
$$

The noun of place and time: It is same as ism al-maf' $\bar{u} l$, e.g.:

? 'place of embracing'.

It is the name given to the part of the Ka'bah which lies between the Black Stone and the door, because it is sunnah to embrace this part.
 to the verb, e.g.:

In the Qur'ān (37:153)

* 100 بَ
(3) We have learnt $|j|$ meaning 'if' or 'when' in Lesson 14. It is also used to express surprise.

On hearing a knock at the door, you go out expecting to see your old friend, but lo and behold, you find a policeman waiting for you.
To express this unexpected turn of event you use ${ }^{\text {and }}$
خَرَجْتٌ تَاءِا شُرطِيٌّ بِالبابِ
'I went out, and to my surprise, there was a policeman at the door.'
If one of us throws his walking stick nothing happens except that its position changes from vertical to horizontal. But when Mūsā عليه السلا dropped his stick, something unexpected happened: it turned into a snake. The Qur'ān uses icthā of surprise to express this event:

'So he dropped his stick, and to their surprise, it was a snake visible; and he drew his hand (from his bosom), and to their surprise, it was white to the beholders.' (7:107-108) Two things should be noted here:
a) a ${ }^{2}$ is usually prefixed to $|\dot{j}|$
b) the mubtada' occurring after $i d h \bar{a}$ of surprise may be indefinite, e.g.:
 there was a snake on the bed.'
(4) The verb ${ }^{\text {b }}$ takes two objects which are originally mubtada' and khabar, e.g.:



## LESSON 23

Here المدايرَ is is the first object and the sentence in in ere the second object, and it is في مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ



In the Qur'an (41:22)

'But you thought that Allāh does not know much of what you are doing.'
 In the Qur'an (18:35)

回㐿
'He said, "I do not think that all this will ever perish".'
(5) We say دََلْتُ البيتَ/ الُْرفةَ/ المستجَ but

ie., if what we enter is a place like a house or a mosque we don’t use وفي otherwise use ${ }^{\text {و }}$. In the Qur'an:
وَوَدَحَلَ جَنَّنَّهُو
'And he entered his garden.' (18:35).
But:

'And faith has not yet entered into your hearts.' (49:14).
We have both usages in:

'So enter among My servants, and enter My Paradise.' (89:29-30).
 intensity in the ism al-fá'l, e.g.:



There are four forms which denote intensity. They are:
a) 'عْ e.g. 'عَلِيْمٌ 'one who knows much' "سَمْ 'one who hears much'.
b) e.g. غَفَعْو شَكُورٌ 'one who thanks much' عَبْوسٌ 'one who frowns much' أَكوُوٌ 'one who eats much'.

d) Jive e.g.

These five patterns are called fà ‘il'.
(7) (7) One must take the test.' It literally means 'There is no escape from the test.' Here $ل$ ل́ is

If a maṣdar mu'awwal is used, بُ may be omitted, e.g.:


## Vocabulary



 to wrong, oppress, treat unjustly (a-i)
to be wronged, be oppressed (viii)

 to contact, to be connected, attached (viii)
to move s.t. from its place, to transport, transfer, remove (a-u)


 2\%: part of the eastern wall of the Ka'bah between the door and the Black Stone which is held as though in embrace

to smile (viii)

(1) to do st. to please Allāh,
(2) to expect (viii)

to bite (ia)


(gr) to merge a letter with another, to assimilate (iv)

serpent




## LESSON 24

## In this lesson we learn the following：


This $b \bar{a} b$ is used only for colours and defects，e．g．：
َ－

The mudāri＇of
It has no ism al－maf＇ül．

This $b \bar{a} b$ has another form with the addition of an alif after the second radical，i．e．，$\overline{\mathrm{J}} \mathrm{J}$ léol，e．g．：
，إِحْمَارَّ＇it became red’（1）
إِذهَامَّ

 extra，but both the dāls（د）are original，because its radicals are د $د$ ．
In determining the $b \bar{a} b s$ we must find out the radicals．The forms in certain cases may be deceptive．
（2）The verb رَّ رَّى has two meanings：
（a）to see，and
（b）to think，to deem，to judge．
 القَلْبِّيَّةُ
The first takes only one object，e．g．：

- رَأَْ⿰⿱㇒㠯⺆⿻二丨⿱ إبراهِيَمَ 'I saw Ibrāhīm.'

The second takes two objects which are originally mubtada＇and khabar，e．g．：
－حامِلْ عالِّ

[^13]-I $\rightarrow$ 'I think he is ignorant.'
In the Qur'ān (70:6-7):
v v v
'They indeed deem it (the punishment) far off, and We deem it near.'
(3) عَسَ is a verb signifying hope or fear like the particle لَّلَ , e.g.:

'It is hoped that Allāh will turn to them in forgiveness.' (Qur'ān, 9:102).

'It is feared that you dislike a thing while it is good for you.' (Qur'ān, 2:216).
عَسَى can be used both as an incomplete and a complete verb. ${ }^{(2)}$


'It is hoped that Allāh will forgive them.' (Qur'ān, 4:99).

Remember that its khahar should be mascdar mu' awwal.
Its ism can be a pronoun, e.g.:
-عَسَيْتُ انَنْ أَزَوَوَجَ هـَا العَا
Here $\stackrel{\because}{ت}$ is its ism.

If عَسَى is used as a complete verb it is immediately followed by the maṣdar mu'awwal, e.g.:

* (3)
'It is hoped that my Lord will guide me.' (Qur'ān, 18:24).
Here the maşcdar mu'awwal 'أنْ يَهِحِيَ is ta'il.
In عَسَيْتُ أنْ أَرْهُبَ 'I am afraid I will fail' عَسَى is incomplete, and in

[^14]
$$
\text { عَسَى أَنْ اُزْهُبَ } \quad \text { it is complete. }
$$
 the meaning of a mașdar. So:
بعْلَ دُخُوِلِ الملـرِّسِ means بعلَ ما دَخَلَ المدرِّسُ .

That is why this $\mathrm{L}_{0}$ is called ${ }^{2}$ 民ّ
The verb that follows the infinitive $m \bar{a}$ may be mād̄̄ or $m u d \bar{a} r i i^{~}$.
Here is an example of the later:

'I will show you magazine after the teacher leaves.'

Here are some more examples:

'For them is a severe punishment for their forgetting the Day of Reckoning.' (Qur'ān, 38:26).

'So taste the punishment for your rejection.' (Qur' $\mathrm{a} n, ~ 3: 106)$.

أَخِي يدرسٌُ بِالمدرسةِ، أمَّا أنا فَأَدْرُسُ بالجامعةِ .

In the ayah (3:106) there is no $\dot{\sigma}$ because the khabar has been omitted as it is evident from the context. The omitted khabar is فَيُعُّالُ لَمُمْ
Here is a translation of the meaning of this ayah:
'As for those whose faces will be darkened it will be said to them, "Did you reject the faith after believing?"'.

## Vocabulary


to make s.o. angry, to anger, enrage (iv)

U






为;
Le log $S^{0}$



Lis 6 iss jos





وَوْرً at once, instantly
(1) tooth
(2) age


green (ix)
to intensify, become severe (viii)
to be defective, faulty (a-i)
 to perform wuḍū (v) (x)
to become white (ix)
to be good, proper, in order, pious (a-u)
produce, yield (of a tree)

unripe date when it starts
turning red or yellow
尼 to sell (a-i) gale la to appear, seem (a-u)
 to be sad (ia) to become

to become dark green (iva)
 to burn, get burnt (viii)
 to clean the teeth (viii) وَ cheek (especially the raised part)

to be straight, to be right, proper, in order (x)
to content oneself, to be satisfied (viii)
 to hope, request (a-u) to administer, govern, to be close, to come next, to follow (i-i)

بَبأسٌ
(1) harm, hurt
(2) strength, might
(3) war


## LESSON 25

## In this lesson we learn the following


إِنْتَغْغَرَ 'he asked for forgiveness',
! إْنَيقَظَ 'he woke up',
َ
'ِ 'he got ready',
إِسْتَحَمَّم 'he had a bath',
, إِنْتَقَالِ 'he resigned',
إِسْتَقْقى 'he laid-down'.
The mudāri's: It is 'لَ


The mr: It commences with a sākin letter, so it takes hamzat al-waṣl, e.g.:


اِسْتَقِلْ تَسْتَتِيلُ



In the ajwaf verbs a compensatory $\ddot{0}$ is added at the end, e.g.:


إِسْتِشَارَةٌ !ِّنْتَشَارَ
In nāqiṣ verbs the final k changes to hamzah, e.g.:
اِسْتِلْقَايٌ for اِسْتِلْقاءٌ
The ism al-fā'il and the ism al-maf' $\bar{u}$ : The second radical has kasrah in the ism al-fá 'il and fathah in the ism al-maf'ul, e.g.:



The noun of place and time. It is the same as the ism al-maf'ull, e.g.:

'future'
vi res 'clinic'
'hospital'
This $b \bar{a} b$ signifies, among other things, the meaning of seeking, e.g.:
غَفَرَ 'he forgave' 'he sought forgiveness'
'he 'he ate'
'he asked for food'
ه́دَ 'he guided' 'he sought guidance'.
 Qur'ān.'.
The word ${ }^{S}$ is an infinitive particle, and
It is used with the muḍāri ' which it renders mansūub.
鲑 (1) is prefixed to it which may sometimes be omitted, e.g.:

'So that we may glorify You much.' (Qur'ān, 20:33).
Here كِكي is for كِي

. 'Work hard lest you should fail.'

'Write down my telephone number in the diary so that you do not forget.'
Here are some more examples of $\square$
ذَهَبَ زُهالِئي إلى السُّوق لِكَيْ يَشْتَرُوا الحَوائُجَ
'My colleagues went to the market to buy the necessaries.'
(2) يا مَرْيَمْ، اسْتَيْقِظِي مُبَكِرَةً لِكَيْلا يَفُوتَكِ القِطِارُ .
'Maryam, get up early lest you should miss the train.'

[^15]${ }^{2}$ In English we say, 'I missed the train'. In Arabic we say. 'The train missed me' : فَاتَنَي القِططار

## LESSON 25

(3) ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ} \dot{\zeta}$ إٍs is another particle of naṣb. It precedes the muḍāri' and renders it manṣūb.

It means 'in that case'. It is used only in reply to a statement.
If your friend tells you:

- يَرْحِعُ الْمُديرُ اليوحَ من الخْارِجِ 'The headmaster is returning today from abroad.' you will reply saying:
- 'In that case we will receive him at the airport.'

Note that the verb after إذَنْ is mansūub.
renders the verb manṣūb only if the following three conditions are met:
a) إذَ إذْ should be at the beginning of the sentence, and it should not be preceded by any other word,

c) the verb should denote futurity.

In the example cited above all three conditions are met: إذَنْ is at the beginning of the sentence, the verb نَسْتَقَبْلَلُ immediately follow it, and it denotes futurity.
But if we say:

the verb should be marfū ' because إذَنْ is not at the beginning of the sentence.
In the same way if we say
إذَنْ في المطار نَسْتَقْبْلُهُ .
the verb should be marfū ' because the verb does not immediately follows إذَ
We may, however, say

- إذَنْ واللَّهِ نَسْتَقْبَبَهُهُ في المططار 'In that case we will by Allāh receive him at the airport', and also
- إذَنْ لَا نسْتَقْبْلَهُ في المطار 'In that case we will not receive him at the airport.'

The verb in these two cases is manșu $\bar{u} b$.
Here is an example where the verb does not denote futurity:
.تَصِلُ الحافِلَةٌ إلَى المَطِار السَّاعَةَ الثَّانِيَةَ ، The bus arrives at the airport at two.'
إِذَنْ أَخافنٌ أَنْ تَفْوتَنَي الرَحْلَّةٌ

Here ${ }^{?}$ أَخافُ is marfū ' because it does not denote futurity.
(4) We have seen that the verb in the mād $\bar{\imath}$ is negated with Ló, e.g.:


But if we negate two verbs in the mādī together, we use ل. e.g.:


ه r. نَّ
(5) We have seen wāw al-hāl prefixed to a nominal sentence, e.g.:

'I entered the mosque while the imam was reading the fätihah.'
It can also be prefixed to a verbal sentence with the verb in $m \bar{a} d \bar{T}$, but then it should be followed by
تَ, e.g.:

'I entered the mosque after the imam had finished reading the Fātihah.'
Here are some more examples

'We left the class after the teacher had finished explaining the lesson.'

'The doctor came after the patient had died.'

'I arrived at the airport after the plane had taken off.'
(6) The verb لُá has four meanings:
a) to make, i.e. to cause something to be or to become something. In this sense it takes two objects, e.g.:
'سَأَجْعَلُ هنَهِ الغُرْهَةَ دُكَّاناً. 'I will make this room a shop.'

Here are some more examples
. جَعَعَلَ اللّهُ الَْحْمْرَ حَرامَ 'Allāh had made alcoholic drinks ḥarām.'

'And He made the moon a light therein, and He made the sun a lamp.' (Qur'ān, 71:16).

'And had your Lord so willed He would have made mankind one nation.' (Qur'ān, 11:118).
b) to think, to deem. In this sense also it takes two objects, e.g.:

'Have you made me a headmaster?' i.e. 'Do you think I am a headmaster?'

'And they made the angels, who are servants of Rahmān, females.' (Qur'ān, 43:19), ie., believe they are females.
c) to make, i.e., to create. In this sense it takes only one object, e.g.:

'All praise is for Allāh Who created the heavens and the earth, and made darkness and light.' (Qur'ān, 6:1).
d) to begin. In this sense it acts like $\overline{\mathcal{U}}$, and has ism and khabar. Its khabar is a verbal sentence with the verb in the mudāri', e.g.:
 Here حامِلٌ حو is its ism and the sentence يَضْرِبُنِي its khabar. (3)


Here are some more examples

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { قُضَاةٌ }{ }^{\text {قٌاضِ }}
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { عَارِ } \\
& \text { 'ruler' } \rightarrow{ }^{\circ}
\end{aligned}
$$

[^16]
## The nawāsib of the muḍāri ${ }^{\text {© }}$

The particles that change the mudã̃i' to mansīh) are called é
These are four, and we have learnt them all. They are:
а) نْ i , e.g.:

'And Allāh wants to turn to you.' (Qur'ān, 4:27)
This particle is called changes the mudā̈ri' to mansī̀ and denotes futurity.
b) ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{f}$, e.g.:

ه पर هِ
'He said, "Surely, you will not be able to have patience with me". (Qur'ān, 18:67)
 mudāri $i^{\circ}$ to mansī̀ and denotes futurity.
c) ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{S}$, e.g.:

'So that we may glorify You much.' (Qur'ān, 20 33)
This particle is called حَرْ i.e., an infinitive particle that changes the mudā̈ri ${ }^{\prime}$ to mansī̄b and denotes futurity.


'I shall come to visit you tomorrow in shā 'Allāh.'
. إِذنْ أْنَتُخِرَكَ 'In that case I will wait for you.'
This particle is called i.e., an answering particle that changes the mudāri ' to mansūub and denotes futurity.



$1,\left|L_{s}^{\prime} \dot{0}\right|-\infty \dot{b}$

 $\begin{array}{ll}x \\ x^{2} & \\ 0\end{array}$


to seek forgiveness (x)
to be or become hungry (au)
hungry
to feed, give food to eat (iv)
to make a mistake
(iv)
clean, means of cleansing

اِسْتَقْقَى (على) اِسْتِقِقَاءً
 اِسْتَقْبَلَ إِْتِقْبَالا رَئيسنٌ ( ج رؤَسَاءًاء)
 ى ى




حَوَّلِ (إلى ) تَحْوِيلا
الِنْتَأْذَنَ اِسْتِئْنَ|ناًا
to ask for food (x)
to be naked (i-a)
to lie down on one's back (x) nape (back part of the neck) (masc/fem) to receive (a guest) (x)
president to seek guidance (x)
to ask for clothes (x) to change, transform, transfer (ii) to ask permission (x)
may no harm come to you and may your indisposition be a means of cleansing you (from your sins).(said to the sick by a visitor).
تَبَعَ تُبَعاًا to follow (i-a)
amount
(2) to lend, to advance a loan (iv)

 إحْتَا جَ (إلى ) يَحْتَا جُ احْتِيَاجًا
 to ask for a loan (x) الِتْتَرَضَ ( من) إِقْترَاضًا to borrow (viii) to benefit, drive benefit (x)


## LESSON 26

## In this lesson we learn the following

(1) الفِعْلُ الُّبُباعِيُّ (the rubāt or quadriliteral verb) i.e., a verb which has four radicals, e.g.:

تَرْجَمَمَ 'he translated'
بَعْثَرَ 'he scattered'
هَرْوْلَ $\quad$ 'he walked fast'
بَسْمَلِ 'he said bismillāh'
Like the thulāthī, the rubāa $\bar{\tau}$ is also either mujarrad or mazīd. ${ }^{(1)}$
The rubā't mujarrad has only the four radicals without any extra letters as تَرْجَمَ which is composed of $\mathrm{t}-\mathrm{r} \mathrm{-j}-\mathrm{m}$.

The mudāri‘ is 'يُرْوْنُ has dammah.



The rubā ${ }^{6} \bar{T}$ mazīd has three $a b w a \bar{d} b$. They are:

تَرَعْرَعَ
تَمَضْمَصَصَ 'he rinsed his mouth with water'



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إِطْمَأَنَّ } \\
& \text { إشْمَازَزَّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

[^17]
In the Qur‘ān (13:28)

- 位 ${ }^{\text {y }}$
'Lo! in the remembrance of Allāh do hearts find peace.'

.أِفْرَنْقَعَ.

The sentence الْفَنْقُعَ النَّاسُ means 'The people dispersed'.
 'This man'. The listener may think that you mean 'This man' and wait for the khabar.
To avoid this ambiguity an appropriate pronoun is inserted between the mubtada' and khabar, e.g.:
هأا هو الرَّجُلو. 'This is the man'
هَؤُلاعِ
هذ هِ هِ السَّيَّارةُ . This is the car'
- هَؤُلاءِ هُنَّ المُسْلِمَاتٌ 'These are the Muslim ladies'

This ambiguity also occurs in a sentence where the mubtada' is a proper noun, and the khabar an adjective or a noun having al, e.g.:
- حامِلٌ اللَّوعِعٌ which may mean 'Ḥāmid the player' or 'Ḥāmid is the player'.

If we mean 'Hāmid is the player' we say حامl هو النَّ
Here are some more examples of

'And those are the successful.' (Qur'ān, 2:5).

'That is the great success' (Qur'ān, 9:72).
 use it. We have in the Qur'ān:

## LESSON 26

的
'That is the Book' (2:2),

'That is the great success' $(9: 89)$.
(3) If you are offered something to eat with the instruction 1 كُ you can eat the whole thing. But if

In the same way we say

'Of the students are some who do not know English'.

Here are some more examples

'You are one of the best students.'
Compare with this

'You are the best student.'

'And they spend part of what We have given them.' (Qur'ān, 2:3).

'And of mankind are some who say, 'We believe in Allāh and the Last Day,' but they are not believers.' (Qur'ān, 2:8).
(4) In In interrogative particle هِّ.
The hamzat al-istifhām (i) precedes the conjunction, e.g.:
أَوَجاءَ المـليرُ ؟
We cannot say وَأَجاء المديرُ
Here are some examples from the Qur'ān

'And did they not look into the kingdom of the heavens and the earth?' (7:185).

'Then, will you believe in it when it has actually happened?' (10:51)
(5) Many ālat commences with $\dot{3}$, e.g.:
وَإِذْ قَال إِبْاهِيمُ
 The meaning of the above $\bar{a}$ yah is 'Remember when Ibrāhīm said...'
 and has no tanwin. Here are some more examples:

'captive'


مَرِيضن 'patient'


جَرْحْى 'wounded'
(7) If the munädā is a noun with the pronoun of the first person singular as its mudäf ilayhi, it has five different forms, e.g.:
a) يَارَبِّي (yā rabbī) this is the original form.
b)
c) (xَارِبِّ (yā rabbiya) the yā' is retained, but has fathah.
d) ${ }^{\omega}$ "َيرَ (yā rabba) the yā’ is omitted and the last letter has fathah.


I have put all the five forms in this mnemonic: رَبِّ، رَبِّيك رَبَّ، رَبَّا، رَبِّيْ
The first form ( ${\underset{\sim}{\omega}, j \text { ) is the most frequently used in the Qur'ān. }}^{\prime}$

[^18]
## LESSON 26

(8) We have seen in Lesson 14 that if the jawāb al-shart is a nominal sentence, it should take $\dot{9}$, e.g.:



'And when those (whom they worship) beside Him are mentioned, (surprisingly) they rejoice.' (Qur'ān, 39:45).

'If they are given thereof ${ }^{(3)}$ they are pleased, but if they are not given thereof (surprisingly) they are displeased.' (9:58).
(9) We have learnt the muda "af verb in Book Two (Lesson 29). In all forms of the mudāri" except two forms printed in blue, the second radical loses its vowel and is assimilated to third radical, e.g.:

 they are isnäded to mutaharrik pronouns.
Now, in the mudāri ' majzūm these four forms:

one with idghām, and the other without it, e.g.:
لَمْ يَحُجَّ

Remember that يَحُحُّ (ya-haju-u) is originally يَحْجُجُ (ya-ḥjuj-u).
In the same way:


The amr of the second person masculine singular also has this possibility:

[^19](hujja) 'perform hajj’ or نُجَّ اُخْجُجْ (u hajuj).

The $a m r$ of the second person feminine plural is already without idghām أُحْجَخْنَ 1 . It cannot have idghām because it is isnāded to mutaharrik pronoun.

Here are some examples of this from the Qur'ān:

'She said, 'How can I have a son when no man has touched me?"' (19:20).

'And he on whom My wrath descends is indeed lost' (20:81).

'And none can guide him whom Allāh does not show the way.' (39:36).

'Say, "If you love Allāh then follow me; Allāh will love you and forgive you your sins."" (3:31).

- av نِ
'And untie the knot from my tongue.' (20:27).


## Vocabulary




to speak using rare and unfamiliar words as if extracting them from the bottom (قَعْر) ) of the language دَغْدْ
 غَرْغَرَ غَرْغَرْةً تَبَرَّةَ تَبَرْداً
race to fall (au)

to come together, to gather (rb-iv) to disperse (rb-iv)
to clean the nose during wudū by inhaling water then exhaling it with force ( x )
(1) to gargle
(2) to be in the throes of death (rb)
to get into water to refresh oneself (v)



## LESSON 27

## In this lesson we learn the following

(1) Kinds of pronouns


The separate pronouns are independent and not attached to any other word. They usually occur at the start of a sentence. They also occur after ${ }_{\text {y }}^{\text {, }}$, es.:


The attached pronouns are not independent, but are always attached to other words, e.g.:

Here -tu is the attached pronoun meaning $\boldsymbol{I}$ and -ka is the attached pronoun meaning $\boldsymbol{y} \boldsymbol{y} \boldsymbol{u}$.
We know that nouns indicate their functions in the sentence by changing their endings, e.g.:


But pronouns do not change their endings; they change themselves entirely, e.g.:


So there are two sets of pronouns one for raf", and the other for naṣb and jarry. And each of these two sets has two forms: one separate and the other attached.

## THE PRONOUNS OF $\boldsymbol{R A F}{ }^{\text { }}$

The separate forms:
Third person


Second person


First person
أنا، نَحْنُ

The attached forms:
The following are the attached pronouns of raf*:

1) mutaharrik tax, as in

2) the alif of the dual, as in ذَهَبَا، ذَهَبَتًا يَذْهَبَانِ، تَذْهَبَانِ، إِذَبَا (ax)

3) the $y \bar{a}$ ' of the second person feminine, as in

4) the nūn of the feminine plural, as in ذَهَبْنَ يَذْهَبْنَ، تَذْهَبْنَ، إِذْهَبْنَ (na)
5) the -nā of the first person plural, as in $\begin{aligned} & \text { ذَهَبْنَ } \\ & \text { (nā) }\end{aligned}$

The attached pronouns of $r\left(f f^{\prime \prime}\right.$ are hidden in the following forms:
a) the $m a \bar{c} c t \bar{~}:$ in the following two forms ذَهَهَبَتْ

Note that the ${ }^{\circ}$ in ذَهَبَتْ ذ is not a pronoun. It is a particle denoting feminine gender.


## THE PRONOUNS OF NAŞB

The separate forms:
You have not been introduced to these forms before. These forms are composed of the word plus the attached pronouns of naṣh which you already know, e.g. إِّيَّكُ (iyyä-ka).

Third person

Second person

First person
-إِيَّايَ، إِيَّانَا

The attached forms:
These forms cannot be mentioned independently. They should be attached to a verb or to or one of its sisters.
Third person


Second person


First person


[^20]
## LESSON 27

## THE PRONOUNS OF JAR

The pronouns of far have only the attached form, and they are the same as the pronouns of naṣb, e.g.:


## WHEN TO USE THE SEPARATE PRONOUNS OF NAŞB

The pronoun of nash should be separate in the following cases:

1) If it is maj' $\bar{u} l b i h i$, and precedes the verb, e.g.:
. We worship You.', but
إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُلُ . It is You that we worship.'
We cannot say كَ كَ نَعْبُلـُ , as is an attached pronoun, and cannot stand alone.
2) If it is a maf'ul bini of a maṣdar, e.g.:
. 'We are awaiting the headmaster's visit to us.'
Here
Here is another example
مُساعَدَتُكُ إِيَّايَ كانَتْ قَبْلَ مُساعَاَتِتي إِيّاكَ
'Your help to me was before my help to you.'.
3) If it occurs after a conjunction, e.g.:
. 'I saw you and him.'

In the same way we say:

- إنِيّ وَإِيَّاكَ نَاجِحَانِ $\quad$ نِّانِ


'We worship none but Him.'


5) If it occurs after an attached pronoun of nash, e.g.:

'Where is the headmaster's magazine? I gave it to him.'.
Here we cannot say أَعْطَيُتُهُهِا
If both the pronouns belong to the same person - as in this example - the second pronoun should be separate. But if they belong to different persons, we may use either the attached or the separate pronoun, though it is better to use the attached pronoun, e.g.:

'I gave it to you.'
(2) One of the patterns of the maşdar is ${ }^{\circ}$ فَعِيل (fa‘īl-un), e.g.:


## Vocabulary




(1) to spend (time)
(2) to judge, act as judge, to decree (a-i)


## LESSON 28

## In this lesson we learn the following

(1) ${ }^{\text {( }}$ along with the verb for the sake of emphasis. It is manșūb, e.g.:
. $\quad$ 'Bilāl beat me a beating.'
The words ${ }^{\circ}$ لْ ضَرَبَبِي بِبا convey the meaning, but you can say this even if he did not actually beat you, but merely raised his hand, or gently placed his hand on your body. But you can say:
. $\quad$ only when he gave you a real beating.
The maf iul muṭlaq has four uses. It is used:
a) to emphasize as we have just seen. Here is another example:

'And Allāh spoke to Mūsā directly.' (Qur'ān, 4:164).
b) to specify the number, e.g.:

c) to specify the type of action, e.g.:

d) as a substitute for the verb. In this case only the masdar is used, e.g.:

صَبْرًا $\quad$ 'Have patience!'
Here the mașdar is a substitute for the $a m r^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$ !
I 1 'I thank you.'
Here the maṣdar is a substitute for the mudāri " أَشْأَكُ 'I thank.'

## Words which deputize for the masdar

The following words deputize for the maṣdar, and are therefore manṣüb, and are grammatically regarded as maf"ill mutlaq:

1) the words كُّلّ 6 بَبْض with the maṣdar as their mudạ̄f ilayhi, e.g.:

## LESSON 28


'I know him fully well.'
. آخَذَنِي اللمُلديرُ بَصْنَ المُؤاخَذَةِ $\quad$ 'The headmaster punished me to some extent.'
أَيَّ نَوْمٍ تَنامُ
'What sort of sleep are you sleeping?'
In the Qur'ān (26:227)

'And those who do wrong will come to know how they will end up.'
2) a number with the mașdar as its tamyiz, ${ }^{(1)}$ e.g.:

In the Qur'ān
Q ớjَ
' $\ldots$ flog each one of them a hundred stripes.' (24:2).

'... flog them eighty stripes...' (24:4).
3) an adjective of the mașdar (the mașdar itself being omitted), e.g.:
. فَهِمْتُ اللدّرْسَ جَيِّدًا 'I understood the lesson well.'
This is for . فَرِمْتُ اللّرْسَ فَهْمًا جَيِّاًا
which literally means 'I understood the lesson with a good understanding.'.
4) ism al-mașdar (إِنْمُ الـَصَحَرِ). It is a word which has the same meaning as the maṣdar, but has less letters than it, egg.:
?
قُبْلَّةٌ 'kiss' is ism al-maṣdar and ${ }^{2}$ تَقْبْبِيلّ is maṣdar
. كَلَّمَنِي كَاْواً شَدِلِيدً 'He spoke to me harsh words.'
5) a cognate maşdar. It is:
a) the mașdar of the mujarrad verb while the verb used in the sentence is mazīd, e.g.:
. الِشْتَيْتُ هذه السيّارةَ شِراءً مُباشِرًا 'I bought this car directly.'

[^21]Here شِراءً is the maṣdar of the mujarrad يَرَى 'to buy' whereas the maṣdar of -إشْتِرعٌ is إِشَرَى يَشتَرِي
Here is an example from the Qur'ān (89:20)

'And you love wealth with abounding love.'

 used.
b) a mașdar of a mazīd bāb which is different from the $b \bar{a} b$ of the verb, e.g.:

 belongs to bāb لَبَسَّ
In the Qur'ān (73:8):

'And devote yourself to Him with complete devotion.'

6) a demonstrative pronoun with the mascdar as its badal, e.g.:

أَتَسْتَقْبْنُنِي هأ الاِسْتِقْبالَ ؟ 'Do you accord me this kind of reception?'

7) a pronoun referring to the mașcdar, e.g.:

إِجْتَهَلْتُ إجْتِهاداً لم يَجْتَهِلْهُ غيري .
'I worked hard in a way nobody else did.'
Here the pronoun ob stand for 1
8) a synonym of the mașdar, e.g.:
. عِشْتُ حَياةً سَعِيلة 'I lived a happy life.'
Here 'حَياة 'life' is synonymous with

## LESSON 28

(2) There are many kinds of masdar.
a) One of them is of


. طبْعَ هذا الكتابٌ طَبَعاتِ $\quad$ 'This book was printed several times.'
طِّبْعَةٌ
In the $a b w a \bar{b}$ of the mazīd the mașdar al-marrah is formed by adding au to the original mașdar, e.g.:

 (fi'lat-un), e.g.:
جِلْسَةٌ 'manner of sitting'
مِشْيَةٌ 'manner of walking'.
We say:

- 'Don't walk like women.'
- 

Note that the first letter has fathah in the maṣdar al-marrah, and kasrah in mașdar al-hay'ah. Maṣdar al-hay'ah is not formed from the mazīd abwāb.



## تٌ مَمَاتٌ 'death'

'knowledge'


In the mazïd abwāb it is the same as the ism al－maf＂iul，e．g．：
20\％＇tearing asunder＇
＇taking out＇
${ }^{2}$ ？${ }^{2}$＇return＇．
In the Qur＇ān（34：19）

＇So We made them tales，and totally scattered them．＇．

## Vocabulary

重 to come，arrive（ia）





to read（aba）

に رُتَّلَ تَرتِيهِ

 to have illicit sex（a－
i）
to display ones charms
（woman）（v） of Islam （shan
（1）to lighten，reduce（speed）
（gr）to pronounce a letter without shaddah（ii）
to recite the Qur＇an slowly（ii）
to greet（ii）


مُفْرَدَاتٌ
gl


قَالَ يَقٌو لِّوْوْلِ to be successful，to triumph， achieve，accomplish（a－u）
（gr）to render a word singular（iv） words
short，concise
to speak，talk（to someone）（ii）
to split（a－u）
to say，to tell（a－u）

جَلَّلَ جِلْ اً to whine，flog（a－i）
reduction
to grow，increase （a－i）

slight，little


here I am，at your service！



## LESSON 29

## In this lesson we learn the following

 لََمْ أَخْرُجْ خَوْفاًا منَ المَطِرِ. 'I did not go out for fear of rain.'

- حَضَرْتٌ حُبّاً لِلنَّحْوِ

Here the maşdar خَوْوْاً tells us the reason for not going out, and the maşdar حُوّاً tells us the reason for attending the class.
This maṣdar mostly denotes a mental action like fear, love, desire, respect etc. It is manșüb.
The maṣdar in maf'ull lahu is mostly with the tanwin, but it may also be mudäf, e.g.:

'Do not kill your children for fear of poverty.' Qur'ān (17:31).
Here is a hadìth:

'The Prophet (peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) prohibited (the Muslims) from taking the Qur'ān to the land of the enemy for fear that the enemy should harm it.'
 and with the $m \bar{a} d \bar{\imath}$ to rebuke him for neglecting an action, e.g.:
 i.e., 'You should do'.
 i.e., 'You should have.'

In the first case it is called حَرْفُ التَّحْضِّيضِ (the particle of urging), and in the second


In the Qur'ān (24:12)

'Why did not the believers, men and women, when you heard it, think good of themselves, and say, "It is an obvious lie"?".
(3) (3 'Out of love for knowledge, not out of fear of examination.'

This $ل$ is a conjunction (لا العاطِفَةٌ). It is used in an affirmative sentence or one containing amer, egg.:

الِسْأَلِ المديرَ، لا الملرِّسَ 'Ask the headmaster, not the teacher.'






强 $\begin{aligned} & \text { harm, injury, } \\ & \text { offence }\end{aligned}$ habit his habit

to intend, have in mind (a-i)
(\%) once نَّ وَرْ harm
 اِسْتَبَقَىَى اِسْتِبْقَاءً to retain, preserve (x)




ذَفَعَ دَفْعاً
صَ صَّرّ اًّ
تَغْاضَى (عن) تَغَاضِياً هَغْوَةٌ (ج هِفَوْاتٌ وَدَّ يَوَدُّ وُدّاًَ مَوَدَّةً to like, love, wish, want (i-a)
" ${ }^{\text {V }}$


الْتْحَقَ (ب) الْتْتَحَاقًا
to join (school, university) (viii) خَافْ يَخَافْ ْخَوْنَاً، مَخَافَةِ to fear, be afraid of (i-a)



to look into, be informed (viii)

莵 to regret (i-a)
(

( ج ا ج أَحْ
condition, state, situation

## LESSON 30

## In this lesson we learn the following

(1) التَّ 1 . It is a noun used to specify and define an indeterminate idea contained in the previous word, or in the whole sentence, e.g.:
a). شَرِبْتٌ لِتْرًاً حَليباً 'I drank a litre of milk.'

The word 1 Ilitre) refers to an amount, but the meaning is not complete unless words like water, milk, oil, etc are mentioned.
b).
 'Ibrāhīm is better than I with regard to handwriting.'
There are many things in which one may be better than the other. In this example the word $\stackrel{\text { خَ }}{\text { خَ }}$ specifies the particular aspect.
The tamyiz is manșūb.
There are two kinds of tamyiz:
a) . This comes after words denoting quantity. There are four kinds of quantity 1) الحَلَدُ (number), e.g.:

'O my father I saw (in a dream) eleven stars ' (Qur'ān, 12: 4).
The tamyiz of numbers is mansūub after 11 to 99 . After 3 to 10 it is plural and majrūr, and after 100 and 1000 it is singular and majrür as we have seen in Book Two (Lesson 24).
2) المِساحة (linear measurement), e.g.:
إشْتَرْتٌتُ مِتْرْاً حَرِيراً. 'I bought one metre of silk.'
3) اللكُ (measure of capacity/volume), e.g.:

4) الوَزْنُ (weight) e.g.:
. عنلـي كيلُوغراعٌ بٌرْنُقالا 'I have one kilogram of oranges.'
Words resembling words of quantity also take tamyiz, e.g.:

1) The word كَّ كَم 'how many' resembles the number, e.g.:


## LESSON 30

2). ما في السَّماء قَلْرْ راحةٍ سَحاباً
'There is not in the sky a piece of cloud the size of a palm of the hand.'.
Here the words $\underset{=}{\text { قَدْر }}$, the size of a palm' resembles words denoting linear measurement.
3) . هُلْ عنَّك كِيسٌٌ دَقِيقاً 'Have you got a sack of flour?’.

Here the word كِيسٌ 'sack' resembles words denoting measure of capacity.

'Whoever does an atom's weight of good will see it.' (Qur'ān, 99:7).
Here the words 'atom's weight' resembles words denoting weight.
The tamyīz al-dhāt may also be majrūr either because of the preposition or because of its being mu ḍāf ilayhi, e.g.:

إشْتَرْتُ وِنْرًا مِنْ حَرِيرٍ


But this rule does not apply to the tamyīz of the number, which has its own rules.
b) sentence, e.g.:

- حَسُنَ هذا الطّالكُ خُلقاً 'This student is good with regard to manners.'

This tamyizz can be construed as either the fā'l or the raf ${ }^{\prime} \bar{u} l$ bihi of the sentence, e.g.:

'Bilāl is good with regard to manners.'
can be construed as:

'Bilāl's manners are good.' ( $f a \mathfrak{a} ~ ' i l)$.

'We exploded the earth with springs.' (Qur'ān, 54:12), can be construed as:

'We exploded the springs of the earth' (maf'ul bini).
This tamy $\bar{z} z$ is always manṣu$b$, and cannot be majrür. (1)

[^22]
شَرِبَ 'he drank'
شُرْبٌ
'drinking'
'he thanked' 'thanks'.

"How beautiful the stars are!’
This verb has another form. It is ur

Both these forms have been used in the Qur'ān:
a iv o $\underbrace{\text { a }}$
'How clearly He sees and how keenly He hears!' (18:26).
The word has been omitted after

## Vocabulary



＇مَقَادِير（gr）what is determined by counting， weighing，cubic measure or liner measure
届 to liken（ii）

قَّ ${ }^{20}$ extent，amount
 to become attached （ia）
哭解厂（1）repose，rest （2）palm of the hand
®ٌrín clouds

flour
届 （including the fingers）


to bring to end，to eliminate，remove（iv） to make water gush forth， to explode（ii）
to deal with the subject matter in detail（ii）
to be cheerful


ب．wheat（egg）
زَهِ to abstain， renounce（ia）

${ }^{20}{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{Jo}$
a quantity which fills something
 vague，ambiguous， unspecified to plant to be good，pleasant （a－i） want（a－i）
to become intoxicated（i－a）

## LESSON 31

## In this lesson we learn the following

(1) لJ Ul It is a noun used to express the state of the șāhib al-hāl while an act is taking place, e.g.:
-
Here Bilāl is the șāhib al-hāl, ie., the one whose state is being described,
LS1, is the haul and
cf is the act.
The haul is the answer to the question 'كَ0ْفَ 'كاء 'how'. In answer to the question one says جاءَ راكِباً.

Here are some more examples:

'The child came to me weeping and returned laughing.'

'I like the meat grilled, the fish fried and the egg boiled.'
The haul is manșūb.
The sahib al-hāl is one of the following:
a) the fao ${ }^{\prime} i l$, e.g.:

'The man spoke to me smiling.'
b) the na lib al-fá 'il, e.g.:

c) the maf"ill bini, e.g.:

d) the mubtada', e.g.:

e) the khabar, e.g.:

'That is the crescent hiding behind the cloud.'
The sahib al-hāl is mostly definite as in the previous examples. It may indefinite, but then it should be:
a) qualified by an adjective, e.g.:

'A hard-working student came to me seeking permission.'
b) or mudäaf to an indefinite mudäaf ilayhi, e.g.:

'A teacher's son asked me angrily.'
If one of these requirements is not met, then the $h \bar{a} l$ :
a) should precede the indefinite șāhib al-hāl, e.g.:

b) It should be a nominal sentence connected to the main sentence with waw al-hāl, e.g.:

In the Qur'ān (2:259):

'Or like him who passed by a township while it was in utter ruins.'
Sometimes, the sw ̄hib al-hāl may be indefinite without meeting these requirements as in the hadith:

'The Prophet (may peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) prayed sitting, and some men prayed behind him standing.
Kinds of haul:

a) الحالُ الحُُفرَوُ . We have already seen examples of this. Here is another:

'The teacher entered the class carrying a lot of books.'

Verbal

'I sat listening the Qurānic recitation from the radio.'
Here the verb is mudāri '.

'I joined the university after my brother had graduated.'
Here the verb is māḍī.
Nominal

'I memorized the Qur' an while I was small.'

'The wounded man came with blood gushing out.'
 either a pronoun or $w \bar{a} w$ or both, e.g.:
a)
a) جَاءَتِ الأَخَواتٌ يَضْحَكْ 'The sisters came laughing.'.

Here the $\cup$ in

Here the ha has no pronoun connecting it to the sahib al-hāl. The only connecting word is the waw.

Here the pronoun and the wan connect the haul to the sahib al-hāl.
Agreement of the haul with the sahib al-häl.
The hāll agrees with the saāhib al-hāl in number and gender, e.g.:
. جَاءَ الطِالِتُ ضاحِكاً 'The student came laughing.'
جاءَ الطبالِبان ضاحِكينِ

. جاءَتِ الطبالبةٌ ضاحِكة. 'The female student came laughing.'
جاءتِ الطالِبتانِ ضا ِحكتَيْنِ
جاءَتِ الطالِّباتٌ ضاحِكاتٍ
(2) One of patterns of the mascdar is "Jo (fa‘il-un), e.g.:

لَعِبَ 'He played ’ لَقِبٌ 'playing'
(3) Here are two more patterns of the broken plural:



b) ${ }^{\text {in }}$ ge (fu‘ūl-un) egg.:


## LESSON 31

the plural of جُالِسنٌ and جُلُوسٌ in جالِسَةٌ
In the Qur'ān (3:191):

'Those who remember Allāh standing, sitting and reclining ...'
In the hadith:

'The Messenger of Allāh (peace and blessings of Allāh be upon him) went out, and there were women sitting.'

## Vocabulary


 (without adding any spices) (aséñó fish u) أَشَارَ (إلى (إشَارَة to point out
 stronger

to spread, disseminate, divulge (iv) to give food to
eat, to feed (iv)

(1) womb (2) kinship

 to pray


## LESSON 32

## In this lesson we learn the following



a）الْ
b）المُمُنْتُنْنَى هِنْهُ example it is الطُّسَّهبٌ．


غنيْر．and These are nouns．
㕰 lo and lo flo These are verbs．

## Kinds of istithn $\bar{a}$＇：

1）If the mustathna $\bar{a}$ is of the same kind as the mustathn $\bar{a}$ minho，the istithn $\bar{a}$＇is said to be＂月． 2 ． 0 ． In the above example ${ }^{2}{ }^{2}$ خ خ is a student．
Here is another example

＇I have visited all the European countries except Greece．＇
Greece is a European country．
2）If the mustathna $\bar{a}$ is wholly different in kind from the mustathnā minhu，the istithnā＇is said to be ${ }^{2}$ طِ

＇The guests have arrived except their baggage．＇
It is obvious that the baggage is wholly different in kind from the guests．
The meaning of the sentence is that the guest have arrived，but their baggage has not arrived．
In the Qur＇ān，Ibrāhīm عليه السالو says about the idols

'Surely, they are enemies to me except the Lord of the universe.' (26:77). It is obvious that the Lord of the universe is not of the kind of the idols.

If the mustathnā minhu is mentioned, it is tāmm as in the previous examples.
And if it is not mentioned, it is mufarragh, e.g.:

. ما رأْتْ كإِّا
In the istithna' mufarragh, the sentence is always negative, prohibitive or interrogative.
The sentence containing the istithn $\bar{a}$ ' is also of two kinds:
a) an affirmative sentence is called $\underbrace{\bullet \rightarrow}$, e.g.:
.
b) a negative, prohibitive or interrogative sentence is called c.e. e.g.

'The students were not absent except Ibrāhīm.' (Negative)

'No one should leave except the new ones.' (Prohibitive)

'Does anyone fail except the lazy?' (Interrogative)

## The $i$ 'rāb of the mustathna :

## The mustathna after ill $\bar{a}$

1) In the istithna ' munqati':

The mustathnā is always manṣū̆h, e.g.:

'Every sickness has a medicine except death.'
Death is not a sickness.
2) In the istithnä ' muttasil:
a) If the sentence is müjah, the mustathna $\bar{a}$ is mans $\bar{u} h$, e.g.:

'Allāh forgives all the sins except shirk.'
b) If the sentence is ghair mïjah, there are two possibilities:

The mustathnā may be mansī̄h, or may have the same $i^{\circ} r \bar{a} b$ as the mustathna minhu, e.g.: Negative (النَّ

'The students did not attend except Ḥāmid.'
ما سأنْتٌ الطلابَ إِلَا حامداً / حامداً.
'I did not ask the students except Heāmid.'
ما اتَّصَلْتٌ بِالطِلابِ إلَّلا حامداً / حاملٍ .
'I did not contact the students except Ḥāmid.'
Prohibitive (النَّ 1 )

'No one should leave except Hāmid.'
لا تَسْألْ أحلاً إلَّا حاملاً / حاملاً.
'Don't ask anyone except Ḥāmid.'
لا تَتَّصِلْ بْأَحَرٍ إلَّا حاملاً / حاملٍ /
'Don't contact anyone except Ḥāmid.' Interrogative (الالِنْتِفْهامُ):

'Was anybody absent except Ḥāmid?'
هَلْ رأيتَ أحداً إلَّا حامداً / /حاملاً ؟
'Did you see anyone except Ḥāmid?'

'Did you contact anyone except Ḥāmid?'
3) In the istithna $\bar{a}$ mufarragh:

Here the mustathna does not have a fixed $i^{\prime} r \bar{a} b$. It takes the $i^{\prime} r \bar{a} b$ it deserves in the sentence, e.g.:
ما رَسَبَ إلآّ بلالٌ. No one failed except Bilāl.'


 done only to find out the $i^{\prime} r \bar{a} b$. The meaning, of course, is the opposite of what the original sentence means.
And in:

Here
There is no problem with the majrūr as it is preceded by a preposition, e.g.:

مَا بَحَنْتُ إِلَّا عَنْ خالدٍ.
'I was looking for none except Khālid',
ما درسْنا إلاَّ بِالجامعةِ الٍِ سْلاميَّةٍ .
'We did not study in any university except Islamic University.'
Note: We have seen in Lesson 27 that only the separable form of the pronoun is used after
Here are some examples of this:
لا نَنْبٌلُ إلٍّا إِّيَّهُ .


'The teacher asked all the students except you.' (not $\left.{ }^{5} \mathrm{~S}_{\mathrm{L}}^{\mathrm{L}}\right)$.

## The mustathnā after

The mustathnä after these words is maijrīr because it is mudâf ilayhi. Its original $i^{\prime} r a ̈ b$ is shown by these two words, e.g.:

نَجَحَ الطلابٌ غَيْرَ حاملٍ .
Here نَجَحْ الطالابُ إِلَّا حامداً.
ما نَجَحَ الطِلوبُ غَيْرَ حاملٍ .

ما نَجَحَ الطلابٌ إلاّل حامداً / حاملٌٌ.

ما نَجَحَ غَيْرُ حاملٍ
Here ${ }^{80}{ }^{\text {P }}$
ما سَألْتٌ غَيْرَ حاملٍ .

ما سَأَلْتُ إِّلا حاملاً.

## LESSON 32

 The mustathnā after

After these two tools of exception the mustathnā is manșūb, e.g.:

'I have examined the students except three.'
The poet says

'Lo! every thing, except Allāh, is untrue.'
Here باطِلُ should have the tanwin, but it has been omitted for metrical reason.
(2) $\sqrt{\bar{C}}$ (alā) is a particle used to draw attention to something important, e.g.:

'Beware, they themselves are the mischief-makers, but they do not perceive.'(Qur'ān, 2:12).

(3) One of the patterns of the masdar is ${ }^{20}{ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ} \dot{\text { a }}$ (fa'l-un), e.g.:

شَرَحَ 'he explained' شَرْحْ 'explanation'.

Note that in the singular there is only one $\dot{j}$, but in the plural there are two.

(5) If the khabar of كَانَ is a pronoun, it may be either attached or separate, e.g.:

In reply to the question:
'آتريلُ أنْ تكونَ قاضِياً ؟ 'Do you want to be a judge?'
You may say:
'No, I don’t want to be one.' with the attached pronoun or:

[^23]with the separate pronoun.

Both أكونَ ane right.

## Vocabulary



 of the listener/reader to the important statement following it

نَبَّبَهَ (ل) تَنْبِيها to draw s.o. attention to, to notify (ii)
(فَز (فَنَبَ to desire, covet, crave






 قِياسٌ (gr) analogy قَاسَ قِيَاسِا $\begin{aligned} & \text { to measure, to draw } \\ & \text { analogy (a-i) }\end{aligned}$

)

## LESSON 33

## In this lesson we learn the following



This is called
It is of two kinds:
a) one with a double nun, e.g.:

This is called نُونُ التَّ كِيِح الثُّ
b) and the other with a single $m \bar{u} n$, e.g.:


This is less frequently used than the thaqilah.
This $n \bar{u} n$ signifies emphasis.
It is used only with mud̄āri ' and amp, not with the māḍ̂̀.

How to suffix this nūn?
a) The muḍāri " marfū́ :

1) In the four forms
 , the final dammah is replaced with the fathah.
So يَكتُنٌ becomes


The same process is used with the other three forms.
2) In the following three forms

yä' are dropped
So يَكْتُوْون becomes


After omitting -na from 'yaktubūna' and adding -nne we get 'yaktubūnna'. As a long vowel is not followed by a vowelless letter in Arabic, the long $\overline{\mathrm{u}}$ is shortened. So we get 'yaktubunna'.
In the same way from

$\square$ (taktubūna $\rightarrow$ taktubūnna $\rightarrow$ taktubunna). Note that the difference between the singular and the plural first and -u- in the second (yaktub-a-nna, yaktub-u-nna).

[^24]
## LESSON 33

The second person feminine singular تَكَتْبِينَ becomes تَكْتُبنَ 'taktubina' and adding -nna we get 'taktubïnna'. Here also the long vowel is followed by a vowelless letter, and so it is shortened. The result is 'taktubinna'.
3) In the two dual forms because its omission will make this dual form identical with the singular form.
An important difference in the dual forms is that the nün takes kasrah instead of fathah.
So the resulting form is يَكْتْبُانِّ، تَكْتُبانِّ. After omitting -ni from 'yaktubāni' and adding nna we get 'yaktubānna'. The final -a is changed to -i for sake of dissimilation, and the resulting forms are 'yaktubānni' and 'taktubānni'.
4) In the two feminine plural forms,
 66 ,يَكْنْبْ 6 , the final nun is retained and -ānni is added. As in the dual forms the nun takes kasrah in these plural forms also.
The resulting forms are
 . يَكتْبْنَانَانِّ

Note that an alif is added between the nun of the pronoun and the nün of emphasis (yaktubna yaktubn-ā-nni, taktubna taktubn-ā-nni).
b) The muḍāri' majzūm

The process is the same as in the mudāri' marfü ' except that the nun in the five forms is already omitted in the muḍāri ' majzūm. Here are some examples:

'Don't sit in this chair for it is broken.'

'Brothers, don't leave the class before one o' clock.'

'Zainab, don't wash your clothes with this soap.'

'Sisters, don't drink this water.'
Note that in the nāqiș verb, the omitted third radical is restored before suffixing the nun, e.g.:


This also happens in the $a m r$.
c) The $a m r$

The process is primarily the same in the $a m r$ also, e.g.:

(uktubna uktubn-ā-nni)

## WHEN TO USE THIS NÜN?

Its use is either optional, compulsory or near-compulsory.
a) Optional. It is optional in the following two cases:

1) in the $a m r$, e.g.:

الْنْزَلَنَّ من السيّارة يا وَلَّلُ ، 'Do get out of the car, boy.'

. لأتكُلَّنَّ وَأَنْتَ شَبْعانُ لو 'Never eat when you are full up.'
-هَلْ تُسْافِرَنَّ وَأَنتَ هَريضوٌ 'Are you travelling when you are so sick?’
If the speaker feels the need for emphasis, he may use it.
b) Compulsory. It is compulsory in the muḍāri ' if it is jawāh al-qasam, e.g.:

- وَالللِّهِ لاَحْغَظَنَّ القرَآنَ الكريَمَ 'By Allāh! I will memorize the Qur'ān.'

Note that this verb has not only the mün suffixed to it, but it has also a /äm prefixed to it (la-aḥazanna). This lām is called لالقَ لُقَ
There are, however, three conditions for its use in the jawāh al-qasam. These are:

1) the verb should be affirmative as in the above example. Neither the läm nor the mïn are used with a negative verb, e.g.:

- 'By Allāh! I will not go out.'

2) the tense of the verb should be future. If it is present only the läm is used, not the nün, e.g.:


وَاوللّهِ لَأَّنُّهُ صَادِقاً .By Allāh! I think he is truthful.'

and اللّهِ لَألُاعِلُهو means 'By Allāh! I am helping him.'
3) the $l \bar{a} m$ should be attached to the verb. If it is attached to a word other than the verb, the nün cannot be used, e.g.:
وَاللّهِ لاِلَى مَكَّةَ اَذْهَبُ . 'By Allāh! To Makkah I will go.'

Here the lām is attached to $\widehat{ى}_{!}^{\prime}$ (la-ilā).

[^25]
## LESSON 33

But if it is attached to the verb, the nün has to be used, e.g.:


Here is another example
واللّهِ لَسَوْفَ أَزورُكَّ.

In the Qur'ān (93:5)


This is jawāb al-qasam, and the qasam is 1
 made up of $\stackrel{0}{\dot{U}} \prod_{s}^{0}$ plus $L_{0}$ for strengthening. The $n \bar{u} n$ of ${ }_{\underline{j}}^{0}$ has been assimilated to the mim of .
Here are some examples:

'If you go to Makkah, I will go with you.'
In the Qur'ān (17:23):

'If one or both of them attain old age with you, do not say to them 'Fie', nor repulse them, but speak to them a gracious word.'
(2) ${ }^{\omega}$

فُ is a verb-noun meaning 'I am annoyed.' or 'I am irritated.'. It is mabnī.
(3) In the Qur'ān (3:169): Here the mubtada' is omitted. The full sentence is:
. On the contrary, they are alive.'

It denotes digression, i.e., change of subject.
This change signifies one of the two following things:
a) الإنْ الإنطال, i.e., cancellation of the previous statement as in this verse:

'Never think of those who are killed in the way of Allāh as dead; on the contrary they are alive, with their Lord they have provision.'

بَلْ is used here to cancel the idea that they are dead, and to assert that they are alive.
b) لJ U le i. ie., transition from one idea to another without cancelling the first, e.g.:

In the Qur'ān (68:26-27)

'When they saw it ${ }^{(3)}$ they said, "Surely, we have lost our way; nay, we have been deprived (of our fruit)".'

## Vocabulary


"obsess
 - 刿


象


to combat, wage war (iii) to leave, let be, renounce (a-u) to write a book
(ii)
to lead so.
to S
good deeds, good things educationist to rebuff, chide, talk harshly (aa)

 to meet to meet (iii)
trial and
temptation
(1) home (2)
couplet, verse
to move sit. from its place, to transfer, remove (a-u)

(1) to saw (wood)
(2) to spread (a-u)
to teach (ii)
teaching

to exhort, admonish to argue, debate (iii)
to educate, to bring up (a child) (ii)
trench, the Battle of Trench tranquility, peace of mind to fast (a-u)
بَ



jg. $2 x$. to come into view, stand out, protrude (a-u)

[^26]
(gr) two or more identical consonants or vowels following each other in close succession. Arabic does not like this phonetic phenomenon and usually changes identical speech sound,

to become attached (i-a)

to emphasize (ii)

to emphasize (ii)

subject, subject matter



to change, alter (ii)

to be necessary, required
 to seek, desire
right, correct
 aggression
(gr) literally 'abandoning'. The particle 'بَلْ signifies abandoning the subject preceding it and proceeding to a different subject.
首 totally abandoning the previous subject
首

## LESSON 34

## In this lesson we learn the following

(1)
 (the diptote). It is a mu'rab noun which does not accept tanwīn, e.g.:


It is of two kinds:
a) Nouns which do not accept the tannin for only one reason.
b) Nouns which do not accept the tanwin for two reasons.

## Nouns which do not accept the tanwīn for only one reason

This reason is one of the two following things:
 (elongated).

The first is a long - $\bar{a}$ written with a yah' $(\mathbb{\aleph})$ or with an calif, and the second is a long - $\bar{a}$ followed by a hamzah ( $\mathbf{c}$ ), and both these should be extra added after the third radical, e.g.:

 الصَّرِّ because the alif in these words is the third radical, and not extra.


Note that words like ${ }_{\text {㸚 }}$
 not extra.


[^27]
## LESSON 34




Even singular nouns on these two patterns are eng.:


Nouns which do not accept the tannin for two reasons These are either proper nouns (المَأَمُ) or adjectives (الوَصْفُع).

## (a) Proper Nouns

Proper nouns do not accept the tannin when they have one of the following reasons:
(1) If they are feminine, e.g.:

آْمِنة، زَيْنَبُ

(3).

If a feminine proper noun is made up of three letters of which the second letter is sākin,
 as a diptote, e.g.:




If a non-Arabic proper noun is masculine, and is made up of three letters of which the second is sa kin, it accepts the tanwin, e.g.:

[^28]George, ${ }^{2}$ خ خ خ is a proper name in India and Pakistan.

But if it is feminine, it remains a gow


If a non-Arabic word was taken in Arabic as a common noun, and was later used as a proper noun, it accepts the tanwin, e.g.:

20 which is a Persian word meaning a gem, and is also used as a proper name.
(3) if they are ${ }^{\prime 2} g^{2} l^{?} e^{\circ}{ }^{\circ}$, i.e., on the pattern of ${ }^{?}$ لُفْ (fu'al-u), e.g.:

(4) if they end in extra alif and mun, e.g.:

 is the third radical, and is not extra.
(5) if they resemble a verb in their form, e.g.:

事 which is on the pattern of
يُزِيلُ which is on the pattern of 'he sells'.
(6) if they are compound of two nouns, e.g.:

(b) Adjectives

Adjectives do not accept the tanwin in the following cases:
 (̈), e.g.:



(2) if they are on the pattern of ${ }^{\circ}{ }^{\circ} \mathrm{i}$, e.g.:



[^29]
\[

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 象 'three at a time' } \\
& \text { زُبا 'four at a time' } \\
& \text { 'two at a time' } \\
& \text { مَمَثْلَشُ } \quad \text { 'three at a time' }
\end{aligned}
$$
\]

In the Qur'ān (4:3):

'And if you fear that you will not deal justly with regard to the orphans, then marry of the women, who please you, two or three or four...'


'And he who is sick or on a journey (let him fast the same number of) other days.'


We have learnt the $i$ 'rāb of the this book.
The jarr-ending of the $\underbrace{\text { صَّ }}_{\text {gَّ }}$
'I studied in many schools.'
سافَرْتٌ من لَنْلَنَ إلَى بَرْلِينَ 'I travelled from London to Berlin.'
هذْهِ كُتُبٌ زَيْنَبَ
But it takes kasrah like a regular noun in the following two cases:
a) when it has a definite article -al, e.g.:


In the Qur' $\overline{\text { an }}(70: 40)$

'But, nay! I swear by the Lord of the easts and the wests that we are indeed Able.'
b) When it is mudãff, e.g.:

'I contacted Bilāl's friends.'
هُوَ مِنْ أحْسَنِ الطّالِبِ
In the Qur'ān (95:4)


Note the words

| ULés | plural of | 'meaning' |
| :---: | :---: | :---: |
| \% | plural of ${ }^{20}$ ? | 'girl' |
| 年 | plural of | 'club' |

Such words are on the pattern of ${ }^{?}$ Jclén, and at the same time they are manqūṣ as their third radical is yā', which appears if these words take the definite article -al,
.المَعانِي، الجَواري، النَّوادي
 They take the fanwin in the raf" and jarr cases, but not in the naṣb case, e.g.:



Here it is maf'ul bihi and so it is manșūb. Here it does not take tanwin.

Here it is majrūr as it is preceded by a preposition. Here also it takes the tanwin. Here are other examples:



Majrūr 'He is member in various clubs.'

## Vocabulary



Lúg middle
 vowelless
Vg leos (gr) transformed

$$
\underbrace{\imath}_{i} \mathrm{~S}_{\mathrm{\rho}}^{\mathrm{o}} \text { compound }
$$

oj widower

$$
\text { auto, }{ }^{\circ} \text { widow }
$$

(1) to add
(gr) to add a noun to another to signify the meaning of possession. (iv)



## VOCABULARY OF MODERN TERMS

| radio and TV (literally the audible and visible transmissions) | لإِذَاعَتَانِ المَسْمُوعَةٌ و المَرِْئِّةٌ" |
| :---: | :---: |
| couch, sofa | الا |
| to hire | 1 |
| to have a bath | انْتَحَمَّ |
| first aid | اللإِهُّافْ9 |
| ambulance | سيّارةٌ الإِّهُ |
| announcement | الإله |
| suggestion, idea | الV |
| to join (a school, a university) | إلتحق بـ |
| half-yearly examination | الامْتِحَانٌ النِّصْفِيَ |
| secretary | ا |
| cashier | أمبنٌ الصناْولوقو |
| departure from school | الانْصرَافْ |
| telegram | البَرْقِيَّةٌ |
| programme | البَبْناهِحْ |
| potatoes |  |
| grocer | البَقِّاَّالٌ |
| municipal corporation | البَلَلِّيَّةٌ |



## VOCABULARY OF MODERN TERMS

period (duration of a lesson)
tea party
graduate
map

habit
to smoke
postgraduate studies
drawer (in a table)
tonic
vertigo
State (country)



اللَّوَاءُ الدُقَقِوِّي


president

to fail (in examination)

one who has failed


Saturn (planet)
to record (in a tape-recorder)
to draw (money from a bank)
cancer

cough
السَّسَّرَجَلُ لُ
lorry, truck
(TV) screen
youth, young men
policemen
policeman
tape (of a tape-recorder)
to switch on (a machine)
flat (building)

fund
charity fund
exactly

$$
-b-
$$

storey, floor (in a high-rise building)
chalk (for writing)
model
tomatoes
to strike a student's name off the rolls, to expel

another name of Madinah


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { طـْ } \\
& \text { الصـةْ }
\end{aligned}
$$

lentil

gram
gargling
cover，title－page
break（during school time）
courtyard
from time to time
examination hall
ball－point pen
rainbow

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Oاعة }
\end{aligned}
$$

football
electricity

sack，bag
kilogram


rules and regulations

## VOCABULARY OF MODERN TERMS

litre
اللقّنِّونٍ
chart
objection
match
museum
metre

vice-chancellor (or president) of a university
radio announcer, newsreader
correspondent
educationist
controller (of student's attendance)
traffic
bolt (of a door)
contest
swimming contest
tape-recorder
pedestrians


## VOCABULARY OF MODERN TERMS

| supervisor المُشْفْفُ |  |
| :---: | :---: |
| teacher in charge of cultural activities | المُشْشْفُ عَلَى النَّشاطِ الثُقَّافِيّ |
| bank | الدَصْرِ |
| lift (in a building), elevator (US) | المِصْهِ |
| airport | المَطا |
| dictionary | الڭٌ |
| school level dictionary |  |
| university level dictionary | الدُفْجْمُ الجامِعِّهُ |
| camp | المُحَ |
| institute | ال- |
| scoop | المِغْرَفَ |
| colic, gripe | الáa |
| crossroads | مُفْتْرَقٌ الطّرّق |
| words | المُفْرَدِاتِ |
| fan | المِرْوَحَ |
| interview, meeting | الحْقُقابَلةُ |
| article (in a journal) | المَقِّالٌ |
| scissors | المِقِصٌّ |
| canteen | المَقصفٌ |
| frying-pan | الحِقِكْكٌ |
| air-conditioner | المٌكيِّفِ |
| million | الحَبَليُونٌ |
| distinction (grade) | الْمُمْنْازْ |

## VOCABULARY OF MODERN TERMS

eraser
sickle

club
literary club
activity
news bulletin
to provide, to lay down, to specify
spectacles

telephone
absentees' list
to distribute

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { Cosing }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 㘶 }
\end{aligned}
$$


(1 ( اللَّرْمُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ
(7 ا ) الدَّرْمُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ

أَجِبْ عن الأسئلَةِ الآتيةِة.
Answer the following questions.
(1) هُ الَ الحسنُ بنُ عليِّ رضي اللهّ عنهما.

(Y) قال له النبي
$-1$
(أ) هَيّزِ الفِعْلَ الثُّلاثِيَّ مِنَ الفِنْلِ الرُّباعِيِّ فيما يلي .
Sort out the thulāth $\bar{l}$ from the rub $\bar{a} \bar{\tau}$ in the following.


Sort out the thulāthī mujarrad from the thulāthī mazīd in the following.

(17) السَّرْسُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ


Write mudatiri", the amer and the masdar of each of the following verbs as shown in the example.

( ) هات أسماءَ الفاعِلينَ مِنَ الأفعالِ الآتية. .
Write ism al-fá'il of each of the following verbs.


Write muḍāri', ism al-fá'il and the ism al-maf'ul of each of the following verbs.

(17) الدَّرْسُ السَّادِسَ عَشَرَ



Point out in the following sentences the verbs belonging to barb fa" "ala and their various derivatives.

- ل
- 






.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - nolo } \underbrace{v}_{=} \text {: jug (1) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of ${ }^{\circ} \mathrm{a}$ 牦宜.


Give the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of "فُقْ


Give the mașdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of "فَعْعَ.


Give the mașdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of "فِّفِّ

What is the plural of


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { جَمْعُه دَكاتِرَةٌ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Use the word يَيْبُ in a sentence of your own.

(IV) الدرسُ السّابِعَ عَشَرَ

## (ll اللدرسٌ السّابِعَ عَشَرَ

Answer the following questions.

$$
1 \text { - أَجبْ عَنِ الأَنْئِلَةِ الاَتِيةِة. }
$$

(1) لم يَحْضُرْ عُثْمانُ لِانَّهُ مُصابٌ بِّسْهالٍ شديٍٍ .
(r) تَأَخَرَّ إسحاقُ لِأَنَّهَ ذَهَبَ إلى مكتبِ البريدِ لِاٍِرْسالِ بَرْمِيّةٍ.
r - هاتِ المضارعُوالمصدرَ من الأفْعالِ الآتيةِ.

Write the muḍäri' and the maṣdar of each of the following verbs as shown in the example.


Write the amr of each of the following verbs as shown in the example.
أَغْقِقْ، أسْلِمْ، أَعِلَّ، آِمنْ، أَبِبْ.
\& - صُغ أْسمَ الفاعلِ من كاٍِ من الأفعالِ الأتية.
(الدرسُ السّابِع عَشَرَ

Write the ism al-fá 'il of each of the following verbs.

- مُسْالِمْ Write the ism al-maf" $\overline{u l}$ of each of the following verbs.

$$
\text { مُغْلَقْ" } 6
$$ 7 المفعول، Point out in the following examples verbs belonging to bāb af' ala, and their various derivatives.


(IV) الدرسُ السّابِعَ عَشَرَ


ا استخرِجْ من الدّرس أَفعالَ باب 》 V
Point out the verbs belonging to barb af ala and their derivatives occurring in the main lesson.




人 - أَبِبْ عن الأسئلةِ الآتيةِ على غِرار المثالِ، وعَينِ المفعولَيْنِ.
Answer the following questions using pronouns as the two maf'ulls as shown in the example.


Rewrite the following sentences using أَصَبَحَ
(1) أَصْبَحَ البردُ شديداً.


Give the plural of each of the following nouns.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } 17 \text { - هاتِ ماضِي (يَأبْي) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the mahdi of يَأْبَ.


Use each of the following words and expressions in a sentence of your own.


(l الدَّرْسُ الثَّامِنَ عَشَرَ
أَجبْ عن الأسئلة الآتيةِ.

Answer the following questions.

> . (1 (1 أَخْرَجَ أُسامةُ المسَّبُورةَ مِنَ الفَصْلِلِ لِيْنَظِّفَهَا
> (Y) بَلَغَتْ نِسْبَةُ النَّجاحِ سَبْعَاً وتِسْحِينَ بِالمِائَةِ

Sort out the transitive and the intransitive verbs in the sentences.




Use each of the following verbs in two sentences: in the first as it is and in the second after changing it to $b a \bar{b}$ af'ala.
: أدْْحَلَ النَّاسُ المريضنَ المستشفَىَ.
(1) دَخَلْ المَرِيضُ المستشَفَى

 : أضْحَحَ الأَبُ الطُّفّْر .
( ) ( ) خَحِحَّ الطفلُ . : أَنْكَى الجُوعُ البِنْتَ
(0) (0) بَخَتِ الْبْنُ

 بعدَ تَضْحْيِهِ (أي نَتْلِهِ إلى باب فَّكَّلَ) .
Use each of the following verbs in two sentences: in the first as it is and in the second after changing it to bāb fa "ala.
: دَرَّسَ بلالٌ حاملاً اللُّفُةَةَ الحَرَبيّةَ.
: خَوَّفَ الاَّبُ الطفْلَ الهِرَّةَ. :
. (Y) خَافَ الطِّنِلٌ المِّرَّةَ.

- نَامَ المَريضُ
- حَفِذِّ حاملٌ سورةَ الْْنلكِ .
(0) جَفَّ الثَّوبٌ . جَفَّفَتِ الشَمْسُ الثَّوبَ .

By what process have the verbs printed in blue in the following sentences been rendered transitive.

( الدَّرْمُ الثَّامِنَ عَشَرَ


Form examples of tahdhir with the help of the following words.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • (1 إيَّاكُنَّ والسُّفورَ يا أخواتي }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (ب) إيَّاكِ والحَسَدَ يا عَزَّةُ. } \\
& \text { • (ع) } \\
& \text { (0) إِيَّاكُمْ والنُّزوُ لَ من الحافلة وَهِيَ تسيرُ يا أطفالٌ . } \\
& \text { • إِيَّاكِ والتَّبَرّْجَ يا بِنْنْتِ (7) } \\
& \text { (V) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Use each of the following sentences as jawäb al-qasam
. (1) وَاللهِ لَقَدْ فَرِحْتُ بِريَارَتِكَكَ


أَدْخِل (أْمْىَى) على الجُمَلِ الآتيةِ .
Rewrite the following sentences using أَْْسْى
أْمْسَى الجَوٌّ sُعْتَلِ لا

- أْمْسَينا مُتْعْبِينَ (Y)
 الأمراضِ المذكورةٍ بين القوسيْنِ .
Write the $i$ 'räb (grammatical analysis) of إنَّ بي صُشاعاً . Answer each of the following questions using the name of the disease mentioned in front of it in brackets.


Give the masdar of each of the following verbs.

 Use each of the following words in a sentence of your own.
(19) الدَّرْسُنُ التّاسِعُ عَشَرَ
(19) الدَّرْسُ التّاسِعَ عَشَرَ

1- أجِبْ عن الأسئلة الآتية.
Answer the following questions.

- (1 )



r - هاتِ المضارعَ، والأمر، والمعدرَ من الأفعالِ الآتيةِ .
Write the mudāri ', the amr and the maşdar of each of the following verbs.


Give the mașdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of ${ }^{*}$.
عَالَجَ: عِلَاْجٌ
نَادَى : نِداءٌ.
جَاهَدَد : جِهادٌ
نَافَقَ: نِفَاقٌ"
- ه - هاتِ أنْماءَ الفاعِلينَ من الأفعالِ الآتيةِ .

Give the ism al-fä'il of each of the following verbs.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { تُيُراسِلُ: : مُراسِلُّلٌ } \\
& \text { كُيَسَاعِدُ: مُسَاعِدُ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the ism al-fá'il and the ism al-maf"iul of the following verb.
مُخحاطِبٌ، مُخْاطبٌ
 الفاعِلِ، وأسمَ المفعول .
Point out in the sentences the verbs belonging to bähb $\begin{gathered}\text { فَا } \\ \text { and and their derivatives. }\end{gathered}$

(19) الدَّرْنُ التّاسِعَ عَشَرَ
¿1 - هاتِ المصدرَ من الأفقال الآتيةِ على وَزْنِ 》ِقعَالَةِ《، .

Write the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern

Give the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of

Give the verb from which the comparative أَوهَنَ is derived, and give its mudāri ${ }^{\prime}$ and mascdar .
Also give four ayah in which this verb or one of its derivatives occurs.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { وَهَنَّ، يَهِنُ، وَهْنَاً. } \\
& \text { أْذْكُر أربِعَ آياتٍ مِنَّ القُرآنِ الكريمِ ورد فيها هنا الفِّلُ: } \tag{1}
\end{align*}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { (آل عِمُرَان: 1٪7) (1) } \\
& \text {. } 19
\end{align*}
$$

Give the mudäri' of each of the following verbs.
يُنْذِرُ، يُضَيِّيُ، يَحُشُّ.

1
Answer the following questions.


- (Y)






Write the mudāri', the amt, the ism al-fă'il and the maṣdar of each of the following verbs.

\& - هاتِ المضارعَ ، والأهرَ، والمصدرَ من الأفعالِ الآتية.
Write the mudāri', the amer and the maṣdar of each of the following verbs.



 وأسمَ المفعولِ، وأسمَّ المكانِ . لانِ
Point out in the following sentences the verbs belonging to bäb tafa "ala and their derivatives.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { : التَأنّئ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. تَسَكُّقٌّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { نَتْهَلَّ } \\
& \text { : فعلٌ مضارع ع } \\
& \text { (9) أَتَعَشَّى (1) }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - تَخَرَّجْتُ ( ( } 1 \text { ( } \\
& \text { : } \\
& \text { ( ) ( } \\
& \text { : فعلٌ ماضٍ } \\
& \text { - 人 }
\end{aligned}
$$

Rewrite the following sentence using bāb tafa"ala as shown in the example.


Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences using an appropriate


Give the mudâdri" of each of the following verbs.


Give the singular of each of the following nouns.


Give the plural of each of the following nouns
(TY) الدّر ريُ الحادي والعشرونَ
(Y) الدّرسُ الحادي والعشرونَ

1- أَحِبْ عن الأسِئلة الآتيِة.
Answer the following questions.

 فِكْرَتَّهُ وقَال: إنّ هذه لَفِكْرُةٌ جَيِّةٌ .



 r - هاتِ المضارعَ، والأمرَ، والمصدرَّ من الأفعالِّلِ الآتية.
Write the mudāri', the amr, and the mașdar of each of the following verbs.


\& - هاتِ أسماءَ الفاعلينَ مِن الأفعالِ الآتية. .
Write the ism al-fä'il of each of the following verbs.
 الفاعلِ، واْسْمَي المكان والزّمّانمان .
Point out in the following sentences all the verbs belonging to bāb تَّفَاعَلِ and their derivatives.


Rewrite the following sentences using لَزْتَ.
(1) (1 لَيْتَ حامداً حيٌّهٌ
(Y1 الدّرسُ الحادي والعشرونَ


(1) هذا الدواءُ لا ضَرَرَ فيه.

(Y) هذه المَسْأَلَهُ لا خِلا
( ( ) لا حاجةَ إلي الكَرَاسِيِّ الآنَّ
(0) لا مِلْحَ في هذا الطعامِ
(T) لا هَثِيلَ لِهِا الطّالبِ في الجامعةِ

- 9 - تأمّلِ المثالَ، ثُمَّ أَكْمْلِ النّاقِصَ

Replace the noun with the masdar mu'awwal in each of the following sentences.
(1) إِيَّاكُمْ أَنْ تَزَنْوُ .
( إَِّّاكِ أنْ تَنَامِي وقتَ الصَّاَلاِّةٍ
(r) إِيَّاكُنَّ أن تَحْسُدْنَنَ.

Write the feminine, and the masculine-feminine plural of each of the following nouns.

(Y) الدّرسُ الحادي والعشرونَ


11 الآتية.

Give the two masdar forms of each of the following verbs.


Write the sound feminine plural of each of the following nouns.

( الدّرّمُنُ الثّاني والعِشْرونَ
(Y) الدّرّْسُ الثّني والعِشْرونَ

1- أُحبْبِ عَن الأسئِلَةِ الاَتَيَّة.
Answer the following questions.






Point out the verbs belonging to $b \bar{a} b \overline{\text { b }}$ لِْنْعَ 1 and their derivatives occurring in the main lesson.

Y - هات المضارعَ وأَسَمَ الفاعِلِ والمصدرَ من الأفعالِ الآتَّة.
Write the mudāri', the ism al-fá 'il and the mașdar of each of the following verbs.


Complete the following sentences.


Complete the following sentences.

Rewrite the following sentences using hamzat al-istifhām.


فعل ماض

فعل هضارع ع

فعل مضارع
أَنْوارُ الشوارِعِ في الساعةِ الخامسةِ صباحاً.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { كسَّرْتُ الزجاجَج. } \\
& \text { تَقَطَّعَ الحَبْبُ . } \\
& \text { قَطْعٌ الحَبْلَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

(TY) الدّرْمُ الثّاني والعِشْرونُ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { فعل ماض }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { اسم فاعل }
\end{aligned}
$$

Complete each of the following examples of $\begin{aligned} & \text { لَوْ } \\ & \text {, with a suitable } j a w a \bar{b} \text {. }\end{aligned}$


Use each of the following words in sentences of your own.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) هذا البابُ لا يَنْفَتِعُ، أُدْخُل مِن البابِ الآَخَرِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { (0) لَوْلا الأُختبارُ لَسَافَرْتُ اليَوْمَمَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • } 1
\end{aligned}
$$

Answer the following questions.



ץ - النَتَخْرِجْ مِن الدرْسِ الأفْعالَ الوارِدَةَ فيه من بابِ 》افْنْعَلَ،.

انتظَرَ: فعل ماضٍٍ تَتْتُهِي: فعل مضارع ع
يَشْتْرِكُ : فعل مضارع ع التْحَقْتْتُ : فعل ماضٍ

اشْتَرَ: فمل أمر اشْتَرَكَك : فعل ماضٍ
نَكْتْفِي : فمل مضارع اقْنَرَبَ : فهل ماض

نَنْتِقِلُ: فعل مضار ع اجَتَنِبو| : فهل أمر اجْتَهِلُوُوا: فعل أمر أَطَّعَعُ: فعل مضارع ع

Write the mudarri', the amr, the ism al-fa' il and the mascdar of each of the following verbs.

(YY) الدّرّس الثّالِثُ والعِشُرُونَ
ع - انْقُلِ الأفعالَ الآتيََ إلى باب 》افِفْقَلَ<، .

Change the following verbs to bub $\begin{gathered}\text { ل } \\ \text {. }\end{gathered}$






等
9

Write the original form from which each of the following verbs has been derived as shown in the example, and name the $b \bar{a} b$.

(YM) الدّرْس الثّالِّ والعِشُرُونُ


Rewrite the following sentences using bāh $ل$ لَقْتْ
إِرتَفَعَ الصوتُ.
 المحْتَلِفةَ
 sentences.

(قَّ : •

-ع ع ع


(7) (7 إْتْسَمْ . لا تَكُنْ عابِساً : فعل أمر.

- (V)

V教
 $\qquad$




侵

r ا - أَدْخل (ظَنَّ) على الجمل الآتية.
Rewrite each of the following sentences using the form of ظَّ


r| - هات جمعَ الأسماءٍ الآتية.
Give the plural of each of the following nouns.
أَخِلَّاُ، سُسُّلُ،
عاء - هات مضارعَ الأفعالِ الآتَية.
Give the mudāari' of each of the following verbs.

 with each of them.

(Yo) الدّرسُ الرَّابُعُ والعِشْرونَ

Answer the following questions.
-




 lesson.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { •يَصْفَارٌ (فحل مضنار ع) }
\end{aligned}
$$


Write the mudäri', the masdar and the ism al-fä'il of each of the following verbs.


Write the mudāari', maṣdar and the ism al-fá 'il of each of the following verbs.


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Y (Y) الدّرسُ الرَّابُعُ والعِشْرونَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • - أْذْكُْ بابَ كُلِّ فِعْلٍ مِمّا يَأَتِّي }
\end{aligned}
$$

Specify the $b \bar{a} b$ of each of the following verbs.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { الِبْيَّ : إِفَلَّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. V }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Change to عَسْى النَّاقِصَهُ


Change

عَسَيْتِ أنْ تُسَافِرِي غَداً .



. الأخْرَى .

Use عَعَّ in two sentences of your own. It should be nāqisah in the first and tämmah in the second.
(Y) الدّرّرُمُ الرَّابِّعُ والعِشْرونَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 11 - هات مضارعَ الفِعْعَين الآتَيْيْنِ . } 1
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the mudāri' of each of the following verbs.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { يَفْقِلُ، يَسْتاكُ . } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

What is the meaning of الوَجْنْةُ, and what is its plural.
(ب) اللّرْسُ الخامِسُ والعِشْرونَ

1 - أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.
Answer the following questions.



- العامِ
. طلَكَبِ حَامِلٌ هَبْفَغاً مِنَ الْمَالِ
- r



اسْتَلْقْيَتُ (فحل ماضِ)

لَا تَسْتَتْحِ (فحل مضارع مَجزوم) اسْتَكْنُوني (فحل أمر)

- اسْتَأْذْنَ (فعل ماضِّ

Write the mudāri ",the amr and the mașdar of each of the following verbs.


$$
1 \cdot r
$$


 sentences.

 changes.




Use إِذْ in three sentences of your own.
بِلال: إذَنْ لا أَخْرُجَ.

الطالُبُ: إذَنْ نَحْضُرَ دُرُوسَهُ .
 التَّالْميذُ: إذَنْ نُسَْاعِدَكَكَ

Negate both the verbs in each of the following sentences.

Rewrite the following sentences changing the subordinate nominal sentences to verbal sentences.
دخلتُ المسجََِ وَقَلْ كبَّرَ الإمامُ.
دخلنا المسجِدَ وقد أقامَ المُؤَذِّنُ .
وَصَلْنا المدينةَ المنورَةَ وقد غَرَبَتِ الشّهمسُ هِ وَصَلْتُ المطارَ وقد هَبَطَتِ الطائرَةُ . دَخَلْتُ الفصلَ وقد شَرَحَ المدَرّسُّ الدرْسَعَ . q - عَيّنْ معنى 》جَعَلَ《
Specify the meaning of $\begin{aligned} & \text { لrach } \\ & \text { in }\end{aligned}$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) لا قَرَأُتُ الدَّرْنَ ولا كَتْتُهُه . } \\
& \text { (Y) لا رأَئُه ولا كلَّمْنُّهُ } \\
& \text { ( } \\
& \text { ( ) لا أَكَكْنا ولا شَرْبِنـا }
\end{aligned}
$$



Write the mudāri' of each of the following verbs.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { يَغْلِبٌ • يَهْبِطُ . يَكْنُو • يُفْطِرُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Specify the bāb of each of the verbs occurring in the hadìth of Abū Dharr.


حاجةُ.

What is the original form of تَظَاَلَحُوا occurring in the haditth.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { لا تَتَظَالَمُوْا }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of
مُشاةٌ. قضاةٌ. هُداةٌ. رُماةٌ. وُولاةٌ. غُزاةٌ.
(Y7) الدرّرْنُ السّادِسُ والعِشرونَ

$$
1 \text { - أجب عن الأسئلةٍ الآتيّة . }
$$

Answer the following questions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( () }
\end{aligned}
$$

Point out the ruba$\overline{\bar{l}}$ verbs and their derivatives occurring in the main lesson, and specify the $b \bar{a} b$ of each of them.


Write the mudarri ${ }^{\circ}$ and the mass dar of each of the following verbs.


Point out the ruba't verbs and their derivatives in the following sentences, and specify the barb of each of them.
(Y) الدّرّْنُ السّادِسُ والعِشرونَ

(Y)










ه - أَحِبْ عَمَّا يَلِي.
(1) اسْنَخْرِجْ ما ورد في الدرسِ من ضمَائرِ الفَصْلِ .

Point out all the instances of

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { هذا هُوْ الكُتِيّبُ الذي أُرِيدُ تَرْجَمَتَهُ إلى اللُّغُة الفِرَنْسِيَّةِ. } \\
& \text { هنا هُوَ السَّبَبُ } \\
& \text { هذا هُوَ المُرَوِقِبُ الجَدِيدُ }
\end{align*}
$$


Rewrite each of the following sentences making the khabar definite with al-, and make the necessary changes.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) هذا هُوَ البَيْتُ. } \\
& \text { (Y) هَ (Y) هُلْلاء هُمُّ النَّاجِحونَّ } \\
& \text { (Y) هنهه هِي الْمَجَلَّةُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (T) الدّرّْسُ السّادِسُ والعِشرونَ } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { V - أدخِلْ واوَ الحَطْفِ على هاكَيْنِ الجُمْنَتَيْنِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$




Write the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of fo fa 'ç.



$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { هذه ها ها المَصْدَرِيَّةُ . } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

What is the singular of الكُجُودُ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مُفْرَدْهُ: جِلْدُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

To which bāb does each of the following verbs belong.

(TV) الدَّرْنُ السَّابُعُ والعِشْرُونَ
(TV) الدَّرْمُ السَّابُعُ والعِشْرُونَ

1- أجب عن الأسئلة الآتِيَّةُ
Answer the following questions.
( ( ) اسْمُمه عُكاشُةُ
(Y) عَلَّمَهَ إِيَّهَهَا أَبَّوْهُ


Point out all the pronouns occurring in the main lesson, and specify the category to which each of them belongs.

(TV)

(YV) الدَّرّسُ السَّابُِ والعِشْرُونَ
 منفصلاً.

Point out all the separate pronouns of nash occurring in the main lesson and mention the reason for their being separate.


Rewrite the following sentences placing the pronoun of nașb before the verb in each of them.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text {, }  \tag{1}\\
& \text {, }  \tag{Y}\\
& \text { (1) } \\
& \text {. }
\end{align*}
$$

 Rewrite the following sentences using إِّ as shown in the example.
(0) عاقَبَهُم اللمُلَرِّنُ . ما عاقَبَ اللمُلَرِّنُ إلاَلا إِيَاهُمْ.

Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the type of pronoun mentioned in brackets.
( ( ) طَلَبَ المُديرُ أَحْمَدَ وَوَيَّيَّيَ.


( .... (
(0) أعْرِفُ أَنَّكَ ورإِيَّاه مُجْتَنِهِدانِ .

Rewrite the following sentences using mascdar.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (1) نَنْتَطِرُ أَنْ يَرُورَنا المُمْدِيرُ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ما نَعْـبُلُ إلَّا إِيَّاهُ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

（YV）الدَّرْسُ السَّابُِ والعِشْرُونَ
^ - أججبْ عن الأسئلةٍ الآتية على غِرارِ المثالِِ.

Answer the following questions using two pronouns of nasb as shown in the example．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَعْطَيْتُهُ إِيّاهُ . } \\
& \text { ( ( أَيْنَ كِتابُ الُدُِيرِ ؟ } \\
& \text { أَعْطَيْتُهُ إيّاها . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَعْطَيْتُها إِيّهُ . } \\
& \text { ( أَيْنَ قَلَمُ الأُخْتِ ؟ (Y) } \\
& \text { أَعْطَيْتُهُم إِيّها ا } \\
& \text { ( ) أَيْنَ دَفاتِرُ الطِلابِ ؟ } \\
& \text { أَعْيَتُهُهُنَّ إِيّاها . } \\
& \text { (0) أيْنَ دَفاترُ الأخَواتِ ؟ } \\
& \text { أَعْطَيْنُها إيّهاها . } \\
& \text { (Y) أيْنَ حَقِيبَةُ أُمِّي ؟ } \\
& \text { أَعْطَيْنُهُ إِيّاهما ـا } \\
& \text { أيْنَ بَرْمِيَّتا حامِلٍ } \\
& \text { أَْطَيتهُمْ إِيّاها . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { 9 - أجِبْ عن الأسئلةِ الآتيةِ عَكَى غِرارِ المثالِّل . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Answer the following questions using two pronouns of nasb as shown in the example．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { سَأُرِيكَهُ بعدَ قليلٍ . سَأُرِيكَ إِيّاه بعد قليلٍ . } \\
& \text { ؟ (乏) } \\
& 11 \text { - هاتِ مصادرَ الأفعالِ الآتيةِ على وَزْنِ 》فَعِيلٍِ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fa＇il．

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { صَغِيريٌ، شَخِيرٌ، صَهِيلٌ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { أَدْراجٌ، خَخَواتِّمُ } \\
& \text { با - هات المضارعَوالأهرَ من الأفعالِ الآتيةِ. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the plural of الخاتَّمُ and الدُّجُ

Write the mudāri＇and amr of each of the following verbs．
يَتَذَكَرُّ، تَذَكَرّْ يَقْضِي، إِقْضِ يُبَسْمِلُ، بَسْمِلْ ．

Answer the following questions.
. قَدِمَ البارِِحَةُ
Ur (Y)

 كُرِّ منها .
Point out all the instances of maf'ïl mutlaq occurring in the main lesson, and specify the signification of each of them.

( الدرسئ الثامنُ والعشرون

\& - عَيِّنِ المغعولَ المطلقَ فيما يأَتي، وأْذر كَوْهَهُ.
Point out the instances of maf'ul mutlaq occurring in the following sentences, and specify the signification of each of them.

(Y人) الدرسُ الثامنُ والعشرون


Point out words deputizing for the mașdar in the following examples of the maf' ul muṭlaq.


Complete the sentence ... سَحَكَتْتُ with three instances of maf'ul mutlaq. In the first instance it should specify the number, in the second the type of action and in the third it should signify emphasis.


Mention all the words that deputize for the maṣdar in the maf' $\bar{l} l$ muṭlaq.
( ) عاتَبْتُهُهُ بَعضنَ الِعتَابِ .
(Y الدرسُ الثامنُ والعشرون

( أيَّ قِراءةٍ تَقْرأ ؟
(ع) اغْتمَرْتُ عِشْرِينَ عُمرةً. (العدد) .
(0) حَفِظْتُ الدَّرْسَ جيداً .

(V)
. يَحْفَظُ هذا الطالبُ الدرسَ حِغْظاً لا يحفظه غيرُه. (الضمير) (N)
(9) اشترَيتُ الساعةَ شِراءًا (مصدرٌ يٌ يُلاقِيه في الاشتقَّاق) .
( • ( ) عِشْتُ حَياةً سَعيدةً. (المُرادف) .

- 1

Give three examples of the maşdar which functions as a substitute for the verb.

Derive the mașdar al-marrah from each of the following verbs.

. 1 - 1 .
Derive the masdar al-hai'ah from each of the following verbs.
قِتْنَّةٌ
艮
عِيشةٌ ، مِيتةٌ 6

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { مَهْلا يا رجل . مَعْنِرَةً يَا أُخِي . شُكراً يا أستاذُ . } \\
& \text { q - صُغْ مصدرَ المرّةِ من الأفعالِ الآتية . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Answer the following questions.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ) ينظر عَدْنانُ في الساعة هِرَارًاً خوفاً مِنْ فَواتِ المَوْعِدِ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Y) }
\end{aligned}
$$

Point out all the instances of maf'ul lahu occurring in the main lesson.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إنما أَنْعْل ذلك خَوْناً من فَواتِ المَوْعِعِ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Point out all the instances of maf'iul lahu in the following sentences.

Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets making it maf "ul lahu.
(1) لَمْ أخْرُجْ من البيتِ خوفاً من الحرّ.
(Yq) الدَّرّسُنُ التَّاسِعُ والعِشْرُونَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (Y) التَحَقْتُ بالجامعة الإِسلامية رغبةً في علوم الدين . }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { • قمتُ إِجالالا للمُّدَرِّسِّ } \\
& \text { (0) أَقْرَأُ الصُّحُفَ بُغْيةَ الاطالِع على أحوالِ المسلمين في العالَمِ. } \\
& \text { (7) لا أزال ألْبَنُ ملابسَ الصُّونِ خَشيةَ أن يُصِيبَنِي بَرْدٌ . } \\
& \text { - V }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give the singular of each of the following nouns.


Oral exercise: Every student uses the expression


Oral exercise: Every student uses tandïm.

هِّألْ

(٪. الدَّرْسُ الثلاثُونَ

1 - أبِبْ عن الأسئلةِ الآتيةِ .
Answer the following questions
( ) اشترى أحمحلُ مِتْرَيْنِ ورقاً وخَمسةَ عَشَرَ قلماً بِأحجامٍ وألوانٍ مُخْتَلِفَةٍ .
(Y) هو أَحْمَهُ
(

Point out all the instances of tamyiz occurring in the main lesson and specify its kind in each of them.

(


Point out the tamyiz in the following sentences and specify its kind.


Complete each of the following sentences with a suitable tamyiz.

( 7
. أُخْرَى

Change the ramyiz to majrīr in the following sentences.


Write the mascdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fir $\%$


Rewrite each of the following sentences using both the forms of fill alta' cijuhb.


Use the word 《<s $\int_{0} \ggg$ in five sentences on the pattern 'I want a fistful of sugar'.

(آّ) الدّرْسُ الحادِي والثلاثُونُ
(ابّ) الدّرّسٌُ الحادِي والثنالثُونَ

ا - أَحِبْ عن الأسئلة الاَتَية.
Answer the following questions
(1) كان هُتْعْبَاً لِإنَّهُ جَاءَ مُسْرِعاً.

(Y) هُوَ أبوبَكَرْرٍ
r- اسْتَخْرِجْ من اللرسِ ما وَرَدَ فيه مِن أُثثلةِ الحال .
Point out all instances of hāl occurring in the main lesson.
(1) مالكَ هتعباً يا أحمد ؟

- سمعتُ رنينَ الجَرَسِ وَأنا في غُرْفَتِّي
(
.
(0) رأيتُهم خارِّحِينَ من المطعم.

(أحكُّ أنْ أقْرأ واقفاً .
- ( ( )
- (9)
-䠔 (1.)
. ( ( 11 )
( Y Y Y إذا هَرِضَ العبدُ أو سَافَرَ كُتِبَ له مِثْلُ ما كانَ يَعْمَلُ مُقِيماً صَحَحِحاً .
(
( ) يخرجُ المدِّرسُ قائلاً: . . .
(آبَ الدّرْنُ الحادِي والثُلاثُونَ
ع - عَيِّن الحالَ وصاحِبَها فيما يلي
Point out the $h \bar{a} l$ and the sta ̣hib al-hāl in the following sentences.


 والتأنيث .

Complete each of the following sentences with the haul used in the example after making necessary changes.

خائفاً، خائِفِينَ، خائِفةً، خائِفاتٍ .

Point out the hā̆l-sentence and the rabbit in each of the following sentences.

|  | الرابط فيها |  |
| :--- | :--- | :--- |

$$
1 Y \varepsilon
$$




Give the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fa'il-un.
كَذِبٌّ

- 1 .

Write the mudāri' of each of the following verbs.

- يَهْوِي، يُفْثِيْي


أَبْياتٌ، أفوْاهٌ .
- I Y

رَحِمٌّ، سَكُرانُ .
(rr) الدّرْنُ الثّانِي والثنالْثُونَ

1 - أجب عن الأسئلة الآتية.
Answer the following questions.


.
 Point out all the instances of istithna' occurring in the main lesson, and specify the kind in each instance (muttaṣil, munqaṭi ${ }^{\circ}$, mufarragh).



(ץ) الدّرّسُرُ الثّانِي والثّلاثُونُ

Point out the mustathnā and mustathmā minhu, and specify the kind of istithna' in the following examples.


Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes.
 1
Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes.

الللّهُ / اللّنَ، إيَّاه / إيَّاه.
(HY) الدّرّسُنُ النّانِي والثلاثُونَ

Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { إبراهيمُ، السائقُ، المجتتهلَ، الكسلانُ، برتقالَتَيْنِ، }
\end{aligned}
$$

Fill in the blank in each of the following sentences with the word given in brackets, and make the necessary changes.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { العُنْوانَ، الدواءَك، الشُّرطةَ، الدَّفاترَ، المُشْاةَ، }
\end{aligned}
$$

Complete each of the following sentences with a suitable mustathnā.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { طبيباً، النُّفَّاحَ، عمّارٌ / عَمّاراً، مِبلالٌ، الزَّواجِ / الزَّوَاجَ، الرِّسالةَ . } \\
& \text {. } 11 \text { هاتِ جَمْعَ الأسماءِ الآتيةِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the plural of each of the following nouns.

Write the masdar of each of the following verbs on the pattern of fal-un.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ضَرْبٌ ، قَتْلٌ، فَتْحْ ، شَقُّ }
\end{aligned}
$$

What is the meaning of الأَمُةُ
مَعْناها : المِرْأَةُ المَمْلُوُ كةُّ، وجمعُها : إِماءٌ.

Write the plural of each of the following nouns on the pattern of 'دَنانِير.
(rّ) الدَّرْسُ الثالِثُ والثنلاثونَ

1-1 أَكٍِّ الأفعالَ الاتَيةَ بِنُونِ التو كيدِ الثقيلةِ .
Make the following verbs emphatic using the mün al-taukid al-thaqilah.
r - استَخْرِجْ من الدرس ما وَرَدَ فيه من أمثلةِ تو كيلِ الفعلِ بِالنون واْذْكُرْ ما وَجَبَبَ فيه التو كيلُ
.
Point out all the instances of nün al-taukid occurring in the main lesson and mention in which of them the use of the nün is optional and in which it is compulsory.


يججوزُ تو كيدهُ لِألنه فِعْل طَلبِيّ

$$
\begin{array}{c|c|}
\hline \text { فَأْنْزِلْن (هذه نونُ التَّو كيدِ } & \\
\text { الخفيفةٌ } & \\
\hline
\end{array}
$$


Rewrite each of the following sentences making it jawäb al-qasam and make necessary changes.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { - هاتِ المضارعَوْوالأمرَ من الأفعالِ الآتيةِ . }
\end{aligned}
$$

Write the muḍāri' and amr of each of the following verbs.

(عَ) الدرْسُ الرَّابعُ وَالثلاثُونَ
 من الصَّرِّْ .

Point out all the instances of the مَمْمُوُو مِنَّ الصَّرْوْ occurring in the main lesson, and mention the reason for their being diptotes.

(ا


Y - Y اسَخْرِجْ مِنَّ الدرْس ما جُرَّ من المَمْنُوع من الصَّرْفِ بالكَسْرِة، واْذْكُرِ السَّبَبَبِ
Point out the occurring in the main lesson which have kasrah in the jarry case, and mention the reason for that.

 ذلك.
Point out the the following sentences, and mention the reason for their being so. If they have kassrah in the jor case mention the reason for that.


Rewrite the following sentences with having kasrah.
نَزَنَّا في فَنَادِقِ المدينَةِةٍ المُنَوَّرَةِّ
 الثانية، ومججرورة في الثالثة.
Use the word in the third.

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { ( ( ) جَاءتْ جَوَارِ } \\
& \text { رَأَنْتُ جَوَارِيَ }  \tag{Y}\\
& \text { تَحَدَّنْتُ إلى جَوَارٍ }
\end{align*}
$$

7 -

عَا
In the sentence عَائشَةُ عائِشَةُ the first word has no tanwin while the second has. Why.
 . V


$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { لِأنه ليس عَكَماً، لا صِغَةً. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Give an example of a مَمْنُوْ ع مِنَ الصَّرْوِّ having kasrah in the jarr case because of its being mudâaf.

Give an example of a مَمْنُوع مِنَ الصَّرْوِ having kasrah in the jarr case because of its having a definite article.



Both the proper nouns 'إْبراهيم and are non-Arabic, but the first does not accept the tannin while the second does. Why.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { يَيْعَرِوِ الآَرُ }
\end{aligned}
$$

Both the proper nouns $\underset{\sim}{~}$ جُر are no the second is säkin. But the first accepts the tanwin while the second does not. Why.

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (جُرجٌ } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

Which proper noun may be used both as on مُصْوُوف and

تَمَارِينُ عَامَّة
Final Exercises

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { س ا: (1) (أَ تُفِيلُ الصَّيْوْورَةَ وَتَتَعَلَّى إِلَى مَفْعُولَيْنِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{align*}
& \text { • (أ) حُخِفَتِ التَّاءُ لِلتَّخْفِيفِ } \tag{r}
\end{align*}
$$


－مَ

》إِظْهَارُ مَا لَيْسَ فِي الْبَاطِنِ، مِثْل تَمَارَضَ وَتَجَاهَلَ ．

المِيمِيُّ مَغْفِرَةٌ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { ( ( ) } \\
& \text { (0) } \\
& \text { عَارٍ: إِسْمُ فَاعِلٍ مِنَ الْفْعِلِ 》عَرِيَّ } \\
& \text { جَائِعٌ: اِسْمُ فَاعِلٍ مِنَ الفِعْلِ 》جَاعَا"، . }
\end{aligned}
$$




كُمْ ：مُضَافٌُ إِلَيْهِ مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى السُّكُونِ فِي مَحَلِّ جَرِّ．

مَنْ:





قَرَيبٌ مِنَ الوَاجِبِ










(Y)


$$
1 \text { rı }
$$





س ه: كَمْ: ظَرفُ زَمَانٍ مَبْنِيٌّ عَلَى السُّكُونِ فِي مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ.




》إِنْسَسْمْ
( )

.


بَارِزَةً: حَاللٌ مَنْصُوبٌ، وَعَلَاْمَةُ نَصْبِبِ فَتْحَةٌ ظَاهِ هِرَةٌ





》"تَظُنَّنَّ

.
.
( ) نعتٌّ، فِي مَحْلِّ جِرِّ





(Y) مَ (Y)
. ظَرفُ زَمَانٍ (Y)
( ) مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلْقُ

س •1: (1) خَبَرٌ.
.


تَمارِينُ عَمَّةَ

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { س 11: ( } 1 \text { ( ) مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. ظرَفُ زَ } \\
& \text {. } \\
& \text { (0) فَاعِلٌ". } \\
& \text { (7) خَبَرْ } \\
& \text { - نَائِبُ فَاعِلٍ (V) } \\
& \text { س (I) ( ) لَوِ أَجْتَهَلْتَ لَنَجْحَتَ }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text {. } \\
& \text {. }
\end{aligned}
$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
& \text { (V) هَذَا هُوَ القَائِلُ . } \\
& \text { - 曼 ( } \\
& \text { (9) خَرَجْتُ عِنَ البَيتِ فَاْذَا رَجُلٌٌ عَلَى البَابِ . } \\
& \text { (1•) كُلْ مِنْ هَذَا الطَّعَامِ } \\
& \text { (11) هِلْ هِنْ طَعَامٍ } \\
& \text { - يَا أَخَوَانِ ذَلِكُمَا عَالِّمٌ } \\
& \text { - 莫 (1世) }
\end{aligned}
$$

. لَهُوَ خَيْرٌ مِنْكَ
(10) إنَّ الرَّهُجْلَ لَعَالِمٌ

名 ( I Y (
. لَأَكَكْتُ وَلَا شَرِبْتُ ( C ( V V)

شُكراً (19)
. جحئْتُ إِلَى المَعْهَاِلِ مَانِياً (Y.)
. أَعْطِني لِتْرَاً زَيْنَاً (Y1)
. (YY)



؟ بِ (Y (Y)
. يَا وَلَدُ الِجْلِسْ هُنَا (YV) (YV)
. أُكِلَتِ الفَاكِهَهُةُ (YN)
.
( $\Gamma$ (
.
(YY)


$1 \& r$

س سّا (1) (أ) شَرِبَ يَشْرَبُ .
(ب) شَرُفَ يَشْرُفُنُ .
(جـ) ورِِثَ يَرِثُ.
(r) (أَ) أَكْرَمَه
(ب) إِنْطَقَقَ
.
. زَزْ

.


 ؟ (Y)
؟ آ (Y)

س (1): ا) حِحَازِيَّةٌ.
. نَافِيَةُ (Y)
شَرْ شَطِيَّةٌ (Y)
( ) كَافَّةُ (
(0)
(7) (7) مَوْوُولَةٌ
$1 \varepsilon \mu$


(9) إِنْتِفْهَامِيَّةٌ .

س (1): ا (1) حَرْفُ جَرِّ.

(Y) النَّاُمُ الْمُزَحْلَقَةُ
.
(0) لَامُ الأَمْرْ

س 19 : مَا أَجْمَلَ النُّجُومَ ! أَجْمهِلْ بِالنُّجُومِ !






فِي لَهْوٍ : جَارٌّ وَمَجْرُورٌ خَبَرٌ فِي مَحَلِّلِّ رَفْعٍ
الوَاوُ : حَرْفُ عَطْفٍ .

تَمارِينُ عَامَّة





》وَا المَوْتُ نَحْوَوَ يَهْوِيهي في مَحَلِّ نَصْبٍ حَالٌ".





(Y)


س س (1) التُّتْلِيلُ .
مَصْدَرِّيَّةٌ



مَا: مَصْدَرِيَّةٌ.






الألَّفُقُ : لِإِشْبَاعِع
س YO : الفاءُ: حرفُ عَطفٍ .







تَقْدِيرُهُ هُوَوْ


 ( ( (

جَجَسْتُ أَرَرْاً الْقُرْآنَ .







.
( )



لا يجوزز الاتُّصَالُ لِأَنَّ الضَّمِيرَيْنِ مِنْ رُتْنْةِ وَاحِلَةٍ
س •ب: شَرَعَ : جَعَلَ الطُّالابُ يَكْتْبُونَ
ظَنَّ : أَجَعَتَنْنِي مِنَ الرَّاسِبِيَنَ ؟


س اس: ( ( ) تُفِيدُ التَّرَجِّيَ
. تُفْيدُ الإِشْفَاقَيَ
$1 \leqslant V$

 .
. وَاللّهِ لَأُحِبُّ اللُّغَةَ العرَبِّيَّةَ
س عـب: دَخَلَ الطُّاَّبُ الجَامِعَةَ إلَّا السَّيَّارَاتِ


مَا جاءَ إلَّا حامِلٌ .




[^0]:    ${ }^{1}$ Only the consonants are the radicals. In this verb the radicals are: s 1 m .
    ${ }^{2}$ The extra letters are written in bold type to distinguish them from the radicals.

[^1]:    e.g. زَلْزَلَ اللّهُ الأرْضَ، فَنَزَزْزَلْتَ 'Allāh shook the earth violently, and it shook.'
    ${ }^{4}$ We have learnt in Book Two (lesson 10) that one of the four letters , is prefixed to the mudāri', e.g. (huriûf cul-muḷāra'ati).

[^2]:    ${ }^{5}$ Because of the doubling of second radical, the number of letters in this $b \bar{a} b$ is four. If the verb has four letters, the has dammah; and if it has three, five or six letters, the حَرْفْ has fathah.

[^3]:    ' yuanzilu minus $\mathrm{a}=$ yunzilu.

[^4]:    ${ }^{2}$ For the masdar mu'awwal (المَصْدَرَرُ المُوَوَوَّلُ) see Lesson 10 in this Book.

[^5]:    ${ }^{1}$ Note that رَغِبَ في الشَّيْيٌ means to like a thing and رَغِبَ عَنِ الشَّيْءِ means to dislike it.

[^6]:    The wäw used for oath is a preposition, that is why the noun following it is mairī̆r. It should not be confused with wäw al 'alf (cél g'g) which means 'and'.

[^7]:    ${ }^{3}$ See Lesson 2.

[^8]:    . مُسْتْشَفَيَاتٌٌ has also a sound feminine plural مُستَشْفًى

[^9]:    ${ }^{1}$ See Book Two (Lesson 21).

[^10]:     learnt in Lesson 15 that amer, nahy and istifhäm are included in țalah. Wish is also țalab. So if a mudāri' verb is connected to țalah by the $\dot{\sigma}$ it is manșüb, e.g.,

[^11]:    ${ }^{3}$ أنْكالٌ النُّ
    ${ }^{4}$ For نُونُ الوِقايةِ (nūn of protection) see Key to Book Two (Lesson 9).

[^12]:    We have seen ${ }^{2}$ عَعِّةُ

[^13]:    This $b \bar{a} b$＇s number is：ixa．

[^14]:    See Lesson 10.

[^15]:    'For see Book Two (Lesson 17).

[^16]:    ${ }^{3}$ See Lesson 10.

[^17]:    ${ }^{1}$ For these terms see Lesson 16.

[^18]:    - For Diptote see Lesson 34.

[^19]:    ${ }^{3}$ i.e. out of zakāh.

[^20]:    'The attached form of the pronoun of the first person singular is $v \bar{a}$ only. The $n \bar{n} n$ is the protection). See Book Two (Lesson 9).

[^21]:     .

[^22]:    ${ }^{1}$ There are certain exceptions which we can learn later.

[^23]:    ${ }^{1}$ See Lesson 1.

[^24]:    ' European Arabists call it 'the energetic mün'.

[^25]:    For talab see Lesson 15.

[^26]:    'i.e., their garden which had been burnt down.

[^27]:     ruling'.
    
    means 'the ultimate plural'. Some plural forms can be changed to this form to get what is called
     made plural further. This is why it is called the 'ultimate plural'.

[^28]:    " These two words belong to the class of التَّمْرُ، العِنَبُ like اسمُ الجِنْسِ الجَمْعِئُ etc. These words are treated as singular, though they are plural in meaning.
    

[^29]:    ' Names of cities in Australia, England, Turkey, France, Syria and Afghanistan: Perth, Bath, Muş, Nice, Homs, Balkh.
    

